

# BACK AT THE MANOR – A NEW STUDIO

**1301** Sarah, the daughter of **the lord and lady** of the **manor**, and her husband, called Otis, work as teachers at the boarding school established at the manor.

Together with the rest of the governing body, they **knock** ( ) **around** / E& **about** some ideas and plans.

They want to **fit** ( ) **out** / **up** a new room **as** a studio for arts and crafts.

An old **quaint** and **picturesque watermill**, **quaintly** and **picturesquely** situated in a picturesque **setting**

**10** on the **banks** (pl.) of the **pond**, is to be converted into a studio where the students can take art and crafts lessons / classes.

Weeds are **poking through** cracks in the foundation.

The lord has a **vivid picture** of the old mill when it was still **working**.

He can still **picture** all the activity around the mill, and he easily **pictures** some of the people working there.

In the winter, when only **clumps of** grass had **poked up through** the snow on the banks of the pond, **20** the kids had fun **poking holes in** the ice with sticks.

In the summer, **duckweed** still **grows on** the **still waters**.

At a time when the government was accused of relying on **paint-by-numbers** policies, the lord had found it difficult to **picture what** the **future** might **hold** for the manor.

**Painting a gloomy picture** of the economy, and painting a **harsh picture of** the government, an article had **painting a gloomy / grim picture of** the future.

**Taking a sharp jab at** the government, the article had **taken a sharp jab at** the government's plans.

**30** Just a few years ago, **the picture** had been very different.

The **overall picture for** the manor had been encouraging.

**Painting / portraying** the government in a **bad light**, the article had **painting / portrayed** the government **as** a gang of **subversive** socialist.

- \* atelier
- \* herren og fru en på > \* godset
- \*
- \*
- \*
- \* tumle med ( ide, plan )
- \* indrette ngt. som ngt.
- \*
- \* idyllisk \* malerisk \* vandmølle  
( særegen / gammeldags )
- \* = \* ... ( befindende sig ) \* i ... placering
- \* på området ved bredden af > \* dam
- \*
- \*
- \* rage op gennem ngt.
- \* levende \* billede
- \* & i funktion
- \* forestille sig ngt.
- \* ... ng.
- \* klump af ( græs )
- \* rage op gennem ngt.
- \* rage hul i ngt.
- \* andemad \* gro > \* på > \* stillestående \* vand
- \*
- \* ~ på forhånd fastlåst, fantasiløs
- \* forestille sig hvxx -
- \* male > \* dystert \* billede af ngt.
- \* ... \* barsk, skarp \* ... af ng.
- \* ... \* dyster, grum \* ... af ngt.  
foruroligende
- \* foretage > \* skarpt \* angreb på ng.
- \* ... på ngt.
- \* billedet
- \* overordnede > \* billede, ~ udsigt for ngt.
- \* ~ fremstille ngt. > \* i et dårligt lys
- \* = \* som ngt.
- \* samfundsnedbrydende

1302 Always trying to <b>picture how</b> to save the manor,	* forestille sig hvxx
the Lord had, however, never <b>pictured</b> the manor <b>as</b> a school	* ... ngt. som ngt.
and never <b>pictured</b> his children <b>as</b> teachers one day.	* ... ng. som ng.
As a child, the old lord usually did as he was told	*
as his father used to <b>knocked him around</b> / E& <b>about</b> .	* slå ng. / behandle ng. strengt
He never <b>pictured</b> the manor <b>housing</b> a boarding school	* forestille sig ngt. at -
and never <b>pictured</b> his son and daughter <b>working</b> as teacher.	* - - - ng. at -
To make a big studio, two <b>rooms</b> are <b>knocked into</b> one,	* rum * ' knalde ' / lægge < sammen
and a <b>wall</b> between two rooms is <b>knocked through</b> .	* væg * banke igennem <
10 In a <b>cavity</b> they find a dead rat.	* hulrum
Otis <b>prods at</b> the <b>mummified</b> rat <b>with</b> a stick.	* skubbe til ngt. * mumificere ( selv / ngt. ) * med ngt.
<b>Poking</b> the <b>mummy with</b> a stick, he <b>pokes it onto</b>	* skubbe ngt. * mumie * med ngt * skubbe ngt.+ adv.
a <b>dustpan</b> .	* fejebakke
The studio has a couple of <b>picture windows</b> .	* ~ panoramavindue
Some windows are provided with <b>roller blinds</b> .	* ~ rullegardiner
that can be <b>pulled</b> / <b>rolled up</b> and <b>down</b> over the window.	* trukket / rullet op og ned
Everything needs <b>painting</b> .	* ~ at blive malet
Having <b>cleared</b> the <b>crumbling plaster off</b> some walls,	* rense > * hensmuldrende * puds * af ngt.
a <b>plasterer daubs</b> new plaster <b>onto</b> the wall.	* pudser * klaske ngt. på ngt.
20 <b>Daubing</b> the wall <b>with</b> plaster, he <b>plasters</b> the wall	* tilsmøre ngt. med ngt. * pudse ( væg )
as he <b>plasters`over</b> the original <b>brickwork</b> .	* overpudse > * murværk
Some <b>paint</b> (< <b>work</b> ) has started to <b>peel</b> ,	* maling ( malerarbejde ) * skalle
so the walls are full of <b>paint chips</b> .	* ~ flis af maling
Walls with <b>peeling paint</b> have to be <b>sandpapered ( down )</b> / *	* afskallende * maling * slibe ngt. ( ned )
<b>sanded ( down )</b> , or <b>paint stripper</b> is used to remove old paint. *	* malings- * ~ fjerner
The rooms has been <b>painting in dull drab</b> colours.	* male ngt. i > * mat * gråbrun
The <b>painter</b> gives most surfaces two <b>coats</b> of <b>paint</b> :	* maler * lag * sandfarvet
of <b>gloss</b> ( paint ) or <b>matte</b> / <b>matt</b> E/A <b>mat</b> paint .	* blank (-hed) * mat
Some woodwork only needs a <b>fresh coat of paint</b> .	* blank maling * ~ en ny gang maling
30 The house is full of <b>paint pots</b> ( or paintpots ) .	* malerbøtte
The paint has to be <b>stirred</b> before use.	* omrøre ngt.
The painter <b>stirs</b> the paint – he <b>stirs</b> and it <b>stirs</b> easily.	* omrøre / * omrøre * omrøres
They buy <b>pots of paint</b> and <b>tins</b> E/A <b>cans of paint</b>	* røre rundt i ngt. * røre rundt
at the <b>paint dealer</b> at the <b>paint shop</b> .	* bøtte maling * dåse maling
	* farvehandler * farvehandel

**1303** A **dark drab scullery** is converted into a **brightly lit utility room painted in a light** colour.

They **paint** the walls **with gloss** ( **paint** ).

The walls of the studio are **painted** white to **maximize** the natural light.

A **brightly painted** door needs a fresh coat of paint.

Taking a break, Sandra **pokes at the paint dust** **with** a stick, **drawing a rough sketch of** an idea.

**Jabbing at** the sketch **with** her stick, she introduces Otis **10** to her idea.

**Jabbing at** a detail **with** his finger, Otis makes a comments.

They **paint** the outer walls **with water-resistant paint**.

They **paints** the outer walls **yellow**.

' **Wet paint**, ' a sign says.

The other rooms are **painted in** bright **colours** too.

Some cables ends, left **poking out of** the walls, need electrical **fittings**.

They put up an old painting to decorate one of the walls.

The painting is an example of the **pictorial** traditions,

**20** The painting **pictures builders**, dressed in **drab**, **daubing the wattle** between the **half-timbering with daub**: a mixture of **clay, mud** etc.

So the **half-timbered** house had **mud-built** walls made of **wattle and da(u)b** or **stud and mud**.

A **wattle-and-da(u)b hut** may have no half-timbering, and a **mud hut** may be made of **sun-baked mud bricks**.

Sandra and Otis both spend a lot of their **leisure ( time ) / spare time** working in the studio.

Their baby sleeps in her **pram** E/A **baby carriage**.

**30** Looking at the tiny head **poking out of** the blanket the assure themselves that she's fast asleep.

\* mørk \* kedelig \* bryggers \* klart \* oplyst  
trist  
\* nytterum \* malet i > \* lys \* farve  
( vaske-, fyr-, hobbyrum )  
\* male ngt. med ngt. \* ~ glansmaling  
\* male ngt. ( en farve ) \* maksimere ( lys )  
\*  
\* ~ i klar farve > \* malet  
\* rode rundt i ngt. \* malings- \* støv  
\* med ngt. \* tegne > \* grov \* skitse af / til ( ide )  
\* stikke ud efter ngt. \* med ( pind )  
\*  
\* - = - \* med ( finger )  
\* male ngt. med > \* vandfast \* maling  
\* male ngt. > \* gul  
\* ~ nymalet  
\* male ngt. i > \* ( lyse ) farver  
\* rage ud af ngt.  
\* tilbehør  
\*  
\* billedmæssig  
\* afbillede / \* bygnings- \* ubleget / gråbrun kraftig  
skildre ngt. arbejder uld el. bomuldstof  
\* tilklasse > \* grenflet- \* bindings- \* med > \* lerblanding  
værk værk  
\* ler \* mudder  
\* ~ bindingsværk \* ~ lerklinet  
\* fletværk og ler \* afstivning og mudder  
\* ~ lerklinet \* hytte  
\* lerhytte \* solbagt \* mudder- \* mursten  
-tørret  
\* fritid  
\* =  
\* barnevogn  
\* rage ud af ngt.  
\*

## PAINTING A PORTRAIT

<b>1304</b> The studio <b>is well equipped</b> as its <b>fitted out / up with</b> all kinds of equipment for art and crafts.	* være ( vel- ) udstyret *	* udstyret med ngt.
There are <b>easels</b> where the <b>cavases</b> can be <b>put on</b> .	* staffeli	* lærred maleri
Working with art has become their <b>hobby / pastime</b> .	* & fritidsinteresse	* sætte < på <
Sandra has <b>drawn</b> since her childhood, and <b>painted</b> too.	* tegne	* male
Drawing and painting well, she is very <b>artistic</b> .	* kunstnerisk	
Already as a child, she showed <b>artistic painterly</b> talents.	* kunstnerisk	* malermæssig ( talent )
Inspired by the manor's collection of paintings by different painters, she has <b>drawn</b> and <b>painted painterly pictures</b> .	* male > * tegne > * stilleben * lave / = / tegne / male > * malerkasse *	* kunstmalerpræget * billede * male ( landskab etc. ) * abstrakt ( ... billede ) * ( selv- ) portræt * palet
<b>10</b> She has <b>drawn</b> and <b>painted</b> landscapes, portraits <b>still life(s)</b> , and <b>abstracts ( abstract paintings )</b> .		
She has <b>done / made / drawn / painted</b> self-portraits.		
Sandra has her own <b>paintbox</b> and a <b>palette</b> .		
The studio has a collection of art books with a lot of pictures.		
Showing <b>pictures of</b> both people and landscapes, there are <b>prints of drawings, watercolours</b> and <b>paintings of</b> both people and landscapes <b>by</b> famous artists.	* billede af ng&t. * tryk af > * af ng.	* tegning > * akvarel > * maleri af ng&t.
Monet, Renoir, van Gogh, and Turner <b>prints</b> are <b>made</b> among many others to make it possible for ordinary people	* tryk, reproduktion *	* fremstille <
<b>20</b> to have a <b>picture by</b> a famous artist.	* billede ( lavet ) af ng.	
The <b>cave paintings bear / give witness to</b> prehistoric expressions of art.	* hule- *	* maleri * give vidnesbyrd om / vidne om ngt.
Sandra knows of some famous artists mainly from articles in their encyclopedia where you only get their <b>life ( hi&gt; ) stories</b> <b>painted with</b> a <b>broad brush</b> .	* livs- * male ( en historie ) med den brede pensel * biografi om ng.	* historie
She has read a few <b>biographies of</b> famous artists where the <b>biographer</b> gives a <b>picturesque</b> description of their usually <b>bohemian, checkered</b> and <b>chaotic lives</b> .	* biograf * bohemeagtigt * slå tiden ihjel	* omtumlet * kaotisk * liv
To <b>kill time</b> , she often <b>draws a picture ( of something )</b> .	* tegne >	* billede ( af ngt.)
<b>30</b> <b>Doing / making a drawing</b> , she uses a <b>pencil</b> or <b>charcoal</b> to <b>do / make</b> either a <b>pencil drawing</b> or a <b>charcoal drawing</b> .	* lave ( tegne ) > * = *	* tegning * blyant * trækul * blyants- * = * trækuls- * =
Many of her pictures, drawings and paintings, <b>portray</b> the idyllic landscapes around the manor.	* ng. forestille / beskrive ng.	
She also <b>portrays</b> nature <b>as</b> wild and powerful.	* ng. beskrive / fremstille ng. som ngt.	
Sandra <b>portrays</b> herself <b>as</b> a happy amateur.	* betegne / beskrive ng. som ngt.	

**1305** Before **doing** / **making** a **painting**,

she often **does** / **draws** / **makes** a few **rough sketches**.

A friend of Sandra's wants an artist to **paint** her daughter's **picture**, and as she considers Sandra a skilled, capable, and competent **portrait painter**, she asks Sandra to **paint** her daughter **for** her.

Before **painting** a **picture** of the daughter, Sandra wants to **draw** her **picture**.

So before **painting** the daughter's **picture**,

**10** Sandra **draws pictures** of the daughter.

**Painting** the daughter's **portrait**,

Sandra **paints** a full-length **portrait** of her.

The daughter's portrait **paints well**.

Working with **objects** in the **foreground**, **background**, or **middle ground**, Sandra may **paint** () **out** an object.

**Painting** in a **light** or **pale colour**, it may be difficult to **paint over** a **bright** and **vivid dark** colour.

The daughter **is** / **looks** a **picture** just like her mother who is **as pretty as a picture** too.

**20** Besides **being** the ( very ) **picture** of **health**, the daughter is **the picture** of **maturity beyond** her **years**.

**Portraying** the daughter's face **as** happy but serious, Sandra **portrays** the daughter **as** a happy but serious person.

She **paints in oils** or **acrylics** ( **acrylic** or **oil paints** ), but also **paints in watercolours** ( **watercolour paints** ).

Using different **paintbrushes**, she changes between **broad** and **fine brushes**.

When she puts the **finishing touch** to the painting, a few **brush strokes** **give** the painting **the finishing touch**.

**30** Making an **abstract** such as an **abstract painting**, she may **daub** paint **on** the **canvas**.

Having **daubed** the canvas **with** paint, she may make a few **strokes of the brush**.

\* lave ( male ) > \* maleri  
\* udføre / tegne / lave > \* rå \* skitse  
\* male >  
\* ngs. billede ~ ( male ) et billede af ng.  
\* portræt- \* maler  
\* male ng. \* for ng.  
\* male > \* billede af ng.  
\* tegne > \* ngs. billede  
~ ... et billede af ng.  
\* male > \* ngs. billede  
~ ... et billede af ng.  
\* tegne > \* billeder af ng.  
\* male > \* ngs. portræt  
~ ... et portræt af ng.  
\* male > \* ( i fuld størrelse ) ⇔ et portræt af ng.  
\* ~ være velegnet til at male  
\* genstand \* i > \* forgrund \* baggrund  
\* mellemgrund \* male ngt. ud / væk  
\* male i / med > \* lys \* bleg \* farve  
\* overmale ngt. \* klar \* livlig \* mørk ( farve )  
stærk  
\* ~ være billedskøn / se ... ud  
\* ~ være billedskøn  
\* ~ være billedet på ngt. / udstråle ngt. \* godt helbred  
sundhed  
\* billedet på > \* modenhed \* udover \* alder  
\* portrættere ngt. som ( adj. )  
\* ... ng. som ( subst. )  
\* male > \* ~ med olie- \* acrylfarve (-r) \* =  
\* ... \* vand- / akvarelfarver \* =  
\* malerpensel  
\* bred \* fin \* pensel  
\* afsluttende \* anstrøg til ngt.  
\* pensel- \* strøg \* give ngt. det fuldendende anstrøg  
\* abstrakt ( kunstværk ) \* ... \* billede  
\* smøre / klaske ngt. > \* på lærred  
\* oversmøre / -klaske ngt. \* med ngt.  
\* ~ penselstrøg

1306 Sandra **prods** Otis **into** painting.

When he starts painting, and paints **unskillfully**,  
he's no more than a **dauber** who is just able to **daub**.

So **step by step**, **daubing** a number of canvases,  
and producing a number of **daubs**, he develops more skills.

' **Practice makes`perfect**, ' Sandra says encouragingly.

Otis finds many **techniques** difficult but nevertheless  
**makes** a good **stab at** them.

Every time he **has** / **makes** / **takes a stab at** ( **mastering** )

10 the **techniques**, he acquires more skills.

Sandra **goads** ( ) on Otis **with** ( **words of** ) **encouragement**.

Enjoying painting, he **needs** no **prodding** / **encouragement**  
**to go on**.

An artist easily **daubs** his artist's **smock**.

They buy their **painter's tools** at an **art shop**.

They also buys **picture frames**.

The shop also sells **painting books** or **colouring books**  
such as **paint-by-numbers books** for childring.

\*

20 A NEW TV

Sometimes Sandra and Otis just **knock around** / E&  
**about** the house.

One day they decide to buy a new TV.

Buying a **high definition flat-screen** / **-panel** television,  
they are astonished to realize how **clear** the **picture** is  
on their **HDTV**.

The **picture** on their old TV suddenly appears very **blurred**  
in comparison.

One evening a boring film at a time starts to get exciting

30 when an angry wife starts **poking fun at** her husband.

Angrily **jabbing at** him **with** her finger,  
she then **jabs** him **in** the chest **with** her finger.

As a response to her **jabs**, and while **ridiculing** his wife,  
the husband **stabs** his **finger at** her chest,  
and then **stabs** her **in** the chest **with** his **finger**.

\* tilskynde ng. til ( at - ) ng.

\* uøvet, ~ amatøragtigt

\* klatmaler

\* klatmale

\* skridt for skridt  
& hen ad vejen

\* oversmøre / klatmale ng.

\* klatmaleri

\* ~ øvelse gør mester

\* teknik

\* ~ gøre et godt forsøg på ng.

\* - - - ( at - ) ng.

\* mestre >

\* teknik

\* anspore ng. med ng.

\* opmuntring  
( opmuntrede ord )

\* ikke behøve nogen tilskyndelse

\* til at -

\* tilsvine ng.

\* ( kunstner- ) kittel

\* ~ malergrejer

\* kunst- ( artikel- )

\* butik

\* billed- / maleriramme

\* malebog

\* male-efter-numre-bog

\* tusse rundt

\* i ng.

\*

\* høj

\* opløselighed

\* fladskærm

\* klar

\* billede

\* high definition tv

\* billede

\* sløret, uskarpt

\*

\*

\* gøre grin med / latterliggøre ng.

\* stikke ( pludseligt ) ud efter ng.

\* med ( noget spidst )

\* ... ng. ( voldsomt ) i ng.

\* med ( finger )

\* ( pludselig, voldsom ) stik

\* latterligøre ng.

\* stikke >

\* finger

\* mod ng.

\* ... ng.

\* i ng.

\* med fingeren

<b>1307</b> As Sandra realizes that Otis has fallen asleep in front of the TV, she <b>pokes / prods</b> him playfully <b>in the ribs</b> .	*		
She <b>pokes / prods</b> him ( <b>in the ribs / side</b> )	* prikke ng. i ng.		* ribben
<b>with</b> her finger to wake him up.	* ... ( i ng.) >		
She <b>pokes / prods</b> her finger <b>into</b> his ribs / side.	* med ng.		
So the next time when Sandra falls asleep watching TV,	* prikke ng. ind i ng.		
Otis <b>pokes / prods</b> her ( <b>in the ribs / side</b> ) <b>with</b> his elbow.	*		
He <b>pokes / prods</b> his elbow <b>into</b> her ribs / side.	* pufte ng. ( i ng.) med ng.		
Having both <b>given</b> the other one a playful <b>poke / prod</b>	* ... ng. ind i ng.		
<b>10</b> ( <b>in the ribs</b> ) ( <b>with</b> their finger or elbow ) to wake them up,	* give ng. >		* puf
either enjoy <b>taking a poke at</b> the sleepyhead and the way	* i ng.		* med ng.
they look or sound when asleep in a <b>sitting posture</b> .	* ~ gøre sig lystig over ng. / ng.		
Watching the news, they're frightened, shocked, and upset	* siddende		* positur, stilling
at the <b>harrowing</b> television <b>pictures of</b> the famine victims.	*		
The victims <b>are</b> the ( very ) <b>picture of misery</b> .	* frygtelig etc. <		* ( tv-) billede af ng.
Feeling a <b>stab of pain in</b> the chest,	* ~ være billedet på >		* elendighed
Otis and Sandra both feel a <b>stab of pity</b> and <b>guilt</b> .	* stik af smerte >		* i ng.
The misery <b>stabs</b> their <b>conscience</b> .	* - - - >	* medlidenhed, medynk	* skyld
Wen the fire in the fireplace has almost died out, the <b>fire</b>	* ~ gør ondt i >		* ngs. samvittighed
<b>20</b> needs to be <b>given</b> a <b>poke</b> and perhaps more firewood.	*		
So having <b>poked</b> the <b>fire</b> , they may put ( ) on more wood.	* give >	* ilden	* ( en gang ) puffen
In a boxing match, a boxer with a good left <b>jab</b>	* rode op i >		* ild
<b>jabs</b> skilfully <b>at</b> his opponent.	* ( kort og hurtigt ) stød		
He <b>walloped</b> his opponent who <b>got a real walloping</b> .	* støde ( hurtigt og kort ) mod ng.		
They watch <b>a little / a</b> ( little ) <b>bit of</b> a game of tennis.	* slå ng. hårdt	* få >	* en ( ~ ordentlig ) gang klø
The <b>grand slams</b> like Wimbledon, French Open, US open,	* en smule af ng.		
and Australian Open are <b>`knockout</b> tournaments.	* = ( * storslået	* brag ( af dør etc. der smækker ) )	
In a <b>`knock-up</b> , the players <b>knock`up</b> before the game.	* knockout / " vind eller forsvind " ( turnering )		
Jones <b>knocked</b> ( ) <b>out</b> his opponent in the first round.	* ~ opvarmning		* ~ varme op
<b>30</b> He <b>walloped</b> his opponent 3 – 0.	* blive slået ud		
His opponent <b>got</b> a real <b>walloping</b> .	* tæske ng.		
With Morris <b>out of</b> the <b>picture</b> , Jones is likely to win	* få >		* en ( ~ ordentlig ) omgang klø
the <b>Grand Slam</b> tournament and the <b>Grand Slam</b> Cup.	* ude af billedet		
	* =		

# OLLIE AND TOM GO OUT ON THE TOWN

**1308** One day Sandra's brother, called Ollie, wants to **go to town** just to **knock around** / E& **about** ( the town ) ( **with** a colleague called Tom ).

They spend some time **poking around** / E& **about** in a bookshop but find nothing.

In the evening they **go to** the **pictures / movies**, and afterwards they want to **paint** the **town red**.

The film has **won / received / got** three **Academy Awards**, called **Oscars** , including **Best Picture**.

**10** After the film they **have supper in** an Italian **restaurant**.

Having spaghetti bolognaise, Ollie **pokes at** the spaghetti **with** a fork to mix it with the meat and tomato sauce.

Having grilled meat with **trimmings** /A& **fixings**, Tom **prods at** the ingredients **with** his knife and fork.

After their supper, going to a more **riotous / uproarious** part of the town, Tom suddenly feels an irresistable urge to **pee**.

In order not to **wet** himself / his **pants** / his **knickers**, he has to **have E/A take** a **pee** in a bush.

So he quickly **pokes** his **head around** the corner of a wall **20** to check that nobody is coming.

The wall is **daubed with grafitti**.

**Grafitti painters** have **painting pictures, slogans, and tags** **on** the wall.

Soon after, they stop at a pub to **quench** their **thirst**.

Having **had** a **poke around**, they **push** their **way to** a place near the bar, not surprisingly next to an attractive young lady.

Soon they get into a conversation with the young lady.

They find out that she's **going out** drinking and celebrating some good news.

**30** She has had a **tumour removed**, feared to be **malignant** / harmful.

Waiting for an answer, the **pain** has **stabbed in** her chest.

To her great relief, the tumour appeared to be **benign** / **non-malignant** / harmless.

Even if she's happy to be **restored to health**, she **feels sick of** being **poked** and **prodded** by doctors.

\* ~ gå i byen

\*

\* ~ tage til byen

\* måske omkring

\* med ng.

\* lede rundt omkring

\*

\* ~ gå i biffen

\* male byen rød

\* vinde / modtage / få >

\* =

\* =

\* bedste film

\* få / ~ spise > \* aftensmad

\* ~ på >

\* restaurant

\* pufte til / rode i ngt.

\* med ngt.

\* tilbehør

\* skubbe til ngt.

\* med ngt. ( spidst )

\* løssluppen

\* tisse

\* ~ tisse i bukserne

\* ~ få sig en tissetår

\* stikke hovedet rundt om ngt.

\*

\* overplastre ngt. med ngt.

\* =

\* ...maler \* male > \* billede \* & slagord \* grafittimaler-symbol

\* på ngt.

\* slukke >

\* sin tørst tørsten

\* ~ rette et undersøgende blik omkring

\* mase sig vej til ngt.

\*

\*

\* gå ud for at -

\*

\* tumor

\* fjerne ngt.

\* ondartet

\*

\* smerte

\* stikke i ( brystet )

\* godartet

\* ikke ondartet

\* ~ gjort rask igen

\* ~ være godt træt af at -

\* puffet og trykket på



**1309** Suddenly raising his voice in anger, a guy at the bar angrily **stabs / jabs / prods** the **air** as the guy next to him loudly **takes a poke at / teases** him, calling him a **cuckold**.

The **tease goads ( ) on** the guy **with** insults.

Having however **poked holes** in the tease's **story**, the victim of the **teases** asks the tease to stop **poking around / E& about** in his **business**.

His wife is, **by the way**, infamous for being an **incorrigible / inveterate { cock- / prick-tease**.

**10** Her **teasingly making advances to** other men **kindles** their **imagination**

while it **kindles jealousy in** her husband.

Her husband always feels a **stab of jealousy** when his wife can't help **teasing** other men.

Sick of **prurient curiosity**, the husband is sick of **prying** and **prurient** regulars, **poking** their **nose into** his marriage.

Nevertheless, keeping on **making fun of** the husband, the tease keeps on **poking fun at / ridiculing** him.

**Stabbing / jabbing / prodding** the **air with** a pen, **20** the barman tries to stop the **tease**.

When the tease keeps on **mercilessly teasing** the husband by maintaining that he has **poked** his wife, a third guy at the bar loses his patience.

The tease **goads** him **into intervention / intervening**.

So **goaded beyond endurance**, the third guy intervenes.

**Jabbing** the tease ( **in the ribs / side** ) **with** his **elbow**, the third guy **jabs** his **elbow** angrily **in** the tease's **ribs / side**.

**Poking** the tease ( **in the ribs / side** ) **with** his elbow, the third guy he **pokes** his **elbow** angrily **into** his ribs / side **30** to make him stop **teasing**.

Turning around, the tease **jabs a finger at** the third guy .

Feeling provoked, he **jabs at** the third guy **with** a finger.

He **jabs** him angrily **in** the chest **with** a finger as he **jabs** his finger **in** his chest **in retaliation**

\*  
\* prikke ( op i ) luften  
\* ~ gøre grin med / drille ng. \* hanrej  
\* drillepind \* tirre ng. med ngt.  
\* ~ gennemhulle > \* historie  
\* drillerier  
\* snage i > \* affærer  
\* forresten  
\* uforbedrelig / indgroet \* pik \* drillepind  
~ narrefisse  
\* drilagtigt \* gøre tilnærmelser til ng.  
\* vække > \* fantasi  
\* ... > \* jalousi i ng.  
\* stik af > \* =  
\* pirre ( en mand uden seriøs hensigt )  
\* nyfigen, lummer \* nysgerrighed \* nyfigen  
\* sexfikseret \* stikke sin næse i ngt.  
\* gøre grin med ng.  
\* latterliggøre ng.  
\* prikke ( op i ) > \* luften \* med ngt.  
\* drillepind  
\* nådesløst \* drille ng.  
\* kneppe ng.  
\*  
\* tirre ng. til ( at - ) ngt. \* indgriben \* gribe ind  
indblanding blande sig  
\* tirret \* udover det udholdelige  
\* stikke ng. \* i ribbenene \* med albuen  
( ngt. spidst )  
\* ... albuen > \* i ngs. ribben / side  
i ribbenene / siden på ng.  
\* skubbe ng. i ... med ...  
\* ... albuen ind i ...  
\* drille  
\* stikke > \* finger \* ud mod ng.  
\* stikke ud mod ng. \* med ngt. ( spidst )  
\* stikke ng. \* i ngt \* med ngt.  
\* ... ngt. ( spidst ) \* i ngt. \* til gengæld

**1310** While **stabbing** his **finger at** the third guy's chest,  
and once again **stabbing** him **in** the chest **with** a finger,  
the tease **pokes** his other **hand into** his pocket  
without being noticed.

The backup eventually **prods** the tease victim **into** action.

It **prods** him **into jabbing at** the tease **with** his fists  
from behind.

The **jab** turns out to be a **fatal move** as, a moment later,  
the tease victim **sinks to** the **ground uttering a death rattle**.

**10** As blood was streaming from his chest, it was obvious  
that every attempt at **revival / resuscitation** would be in vain.

**Petrified** for a moment, the tease slowly realizes that  
he has **jabbed / stabbed** his tease victim ( **in** the chest )  
**with** his **flick knife** E/A **switchblade knife**.

Having **jabbed** his **knife into** his tease victim's chest,  
he has **jabbed / stabbed** his tease victim **to death**.

Everybody in the pub is shocked at the murder.

When the ambulance arrives, the paramedics have to  
**accept** ( the **fact** ) **that** the murder victim has lost so much  
**20** blood that every attempt to **revive / resuscitate** him  
would be in vain.  
ri` sùsiteit

Having **penetrated** the victim's chest,  
the knife must have **penetrated** his heart.

When the police arrive, the murderer is arrested,  
and the corpse / dead body is photographed.

**Interviewing** the witnesses, the police are trying to  
**build up a picture of** what happened.

Not until the the police have finished their **interviews**,  
Ollie and Tom are allowed to leave the pub.

**30 Poking into** people's private lives and businesses as usual,  
journalists already **poke about / around** outside the pub  
asking both **searching** and **tactless** questions.

\* stikke > \* finger \* i ngt.  
\* ... ng. \* ngt. \* med ngt.  
\* stikke hånden i lommen  
\*  
\* tilskynde ng. til ngt.  
\* ... ng. til at - \* støde til ng. med ngt.  
\*  
\* nævestød \* fatal, dødelig \* udspil  
\* synke til jorden \* udstøde > \* dødsrallen  
\*  
\* genoplivning  
\* forstenet  
\* stikke ng. \* i ngt.  
\* med ngt. \* springkniv  
\* stikke > \* kniv \* i ngt.  
\* ... ng. ~ dolke ng. ... \* til døde, ihjel  
\*  
\*  
\* & konstatere at -  
\* genoplive ng.  
\*  
\* gennembore ( bryst )  
\* ... ( hjerte )  
\*  
\*  
\* ( politiet ) afhøre ng.  
\* opbygge > \* billede af ngt.  
\* afhøring  
\*  
\* stikke snuden i ngt.  
\* ~ snuse omkring  
\* undersøgende \* taktløs, indiskret  
& borende

1311 Shocked, <b>downcast</b> , and <b>dejected</b> at the fatal accident,	* nedtrykt	* =
Ollie and Tom have a hard time <b>enduring</b> the rest of the night	* udholde ngt.	
until they can catch a bus home in the morning.	*	
Even if they <b>knock () back</b> quite a few <b>stiff drinks</b>	* nedsvælge ngt.	* stiv > * drink
in order to <b>get through</b> the rest of the night,	* komme igennem ( svær tid )	
they still feel shocked and <b>downhearted at</b> the <b>fatal stabbing</b> .	* nedtrykt over ngt.	* fatal, dødelig * knivstikkeri
As they arrive at home, the news has already spread	*	
throughout the local radio.	*	
' Middle-aged man <b>knocked () off in a stabbing</b> ,' it said.	* slået ihjel	* i et knivstikkeri
The <b>autopsy / post mortem</b> shows that the victim	* obduktion	
<b>10</b> has <b>received</b> a single <b>stab</b> in the chest.	* få >	* knivstik i ( brystet )
So having <b>died of</b> a single <b>stab wound to the heart</b> ,	* dø af ngt.	* stiksår * mod / i hjertet
he was <b>killed with</b> a single <b>stab to the heart</b> .	* dræbe ng. med ngt.	* stik * =
Yet <b>everyday life</b> at the school has to go on.	* hverdagslivet	
*		

## IN COURT

One day, Ollie and Tom have to <b>give evidence</b> at the trial.	* aflægge vidneudsagn	
Going in Tom's old car, they both agree that they'd prefer	*	
a car with a little more <b>poke</b> .	* skub i	
At a time, they have to <b>take a diversion</b> E/A <b>detour</b>	* tage >	* ( anvist ) omkørsel
<b>20</b> as there's some <b>roadworks</b> E/A < <b>work</b> on their way	*	
The <b>road workers</b> are in the <b>process</b> of <b>widening</b> the road.	* vejarbejder * være i gang med at - * udvide ( vej )	
A <b>navvy</b> (E) is a <b>manual labourer</b> employed in	* ~ jord og betonarbejder * håndens - * arbejder	
<b>excavating for</b> or building roads, railways, canals etc.	* vej- / jernbanearbejder * udgrave til ngt.	
Driving on a bad road, they <b>poke along at</b> about 40 km	* rode afsted med x	
an hour.	*	
In court the accused <b>pleads self defence</b> .	* plædere / påberåbe sig >	* selvforsvar
A <b>testimony given</b> at court in fact <b>paints / portrays</b>	* vidneudsagn < give	* ~ beskrive ng. >
the murder victim <b>as</b> the real troublemaker.	* som ngt.	
Having listened to the accused, Ollie and Tom agree	*	
<b>30</b> that he is <b>not as bad as</b> he is <b>painted</b> .	* ikke så slem som ng. er gjort til	
At the bar he actually <b>is</b> the ( very ) <b>picture of guilt</b> .	* være billedet af >	* skyld ~ ligne skyldigheden selv

## IN THE STUDIO

**1312** The studio gets a **lathe** installed.  
 It's a machine that shapes pieces of wood by turning them  
 against a fixed cutting tool such as a **chisel**.  
 \*

\* drejebænk  
 \*  
 \* stemmejern

## ETCHING

Sandra and Otis want to learn how to **etch**.  
**Etching** is a method to **cut** or **corrode** a **design** on  
 a piece of stone, metal, glass, etc.  
**Etching** is a method of making prints from a plate,  
**10** covered with an **acid-resistant** ground, on which a design  
 is drawn with a needle.

\* radere, lave ætsninger  
 \* ætsning \* skære > \* ætse > \* aftegning  
 radering motiv, mønster  
 \*

An **etching** is a printed picture made by etching.  
**Copper corrodes** in **acids**.  
 The plate is then placed in **corrosive** acid, the **exposed**  
 lines being **eaten away** as the acid **corrodes** the metal.

\* ætsning  
 radering  
 \* ætsning  
 radering  
 \* syrerestistent / -modstandsdygtig  
 \*  
 \* radering  
 \* kobber \* korrodere, ætset  
 tæres, nedbrydes \* syre  
 \* ætsende \* blotlagt  
 \* ~ tæret væk \* ætse ngt.

Otis wants to **etch** a design **on** a **copper plate**.  
 As he **etches** lines **into** the copper,  
 he **etches** a design **in** the plate.

\* ætse / radere ngt. på > \* kobber- \* plade  
 \* ... ngt. ind / ned i ngt.  
 \* ... ngt. i ngt.

When the plate is **etched with** a **design**,  
**20** he **daubs** the plate **with ink**.  
 He **spreads** the ink all **over** the design  
 in order to **charged** all the **furrows with** ink.  
 Provided that only the **recessed** lines **retain** ink,  
 the design is transferred to paper by rolling under pressure.

\* ... med > \* tegning  
 mønster  
 \* oversmøre / -klasse ngt. med ngt. \* blæk  
 trykssværite  
 \* sprede / brede ngt. ud over ngt.  
 \* lade / ~ fylde > \* fure \* op med ngt.  
 \* forsænket \* tilbageholde ngt.  
 \*

An old tin **tankard** has someone's initials **etched on** it,  
 and a glass tankard is **etched with** a **date mark**.

\* drikkekrus ( evt. m. låg ) \* ridse, radere  
 indgravere  
 \* = \* dato- \* mærke

An **engraver** has **engraved** the initials **on** the tankard,  
 and **engraved** the tankard **with** the date mark.

\* gravør \* ind- / gravere ngt. på ngt.  
 \* ... ngt. med ngt.

**Engraving** is the process or art of etching designs on  
**30** wood, stone, metal, etc. by cutting or corrosion.

\* gravering  
 gravørkunst  
 \*

An **engraving** is an **engraved** design or a printed picture  
 made by **engraving** a design **on** wood, stone metal etc.  
 and printing the design on paper.

\* gravering, stik \* indgraveret  
 \* gravere / stikke / ridse ngt. på ngt.  
 \*

## RUST

**1313** The **moisture** of the air **corrodes** some metals.

A **rustproof** metal or an **alloy** like **stainless steel**,  
doesn't **corrode** in **moist** air.

The **corrosive** effect of **moistness** causes **rust spots**.

So as **damp** weather **rust** metal, careless **keeping**  
easily **rusts** unprotected **implements**, machines, and engines.

Exposed to **dampness**, unprotected metal parts may **rust**.

Exposing an object to wind and weather **spreads** the **rust**  
so a **rusting** object may eventually become covered with **rust**.

**10** It's important to look for signs of **corrosion** and rust.

A **rusting** / **rusted** / **rusty** gate needs to be restored.

Some of the bolts are **rusted in**.

Some **rust-bound nuts** and **washers** have **rusted solidly**,  
and some bolt heads have **rusted away**.

The painter **grinds** the **rusted** iron as it's very important  
to clean off any **corrosion** / **rust** before applying paint.

He gives the gate **an anti-corrosion / -rust treatment**.

He **treats** the gate **against corrosion** and **rust**  
with **corrosion- / rust-preventing** substance

**20** before he paints it with an **anti-rust** paint.

They hope the **corrosion protection** will last for years.

In the late evening they admire the **freshly painted** gate  
**etched against** the golden sky.

\*

\* fugtighed \* korrodere / ætse ngt.

\* ~ rustfri \* legering \* ( pletfri ), ~ rustfrit \* stål

\* korrodere, anløbe \* fugtig ( luft )

\* korroderende \* fugtighed \* rustplet

\* fugtigt ( vejr ) \* få ngt. til at ruste \* opbevaring

\* - = - \* redskab, værktøj

\* fugtighed \* ruste

\* sprede > \* rust

\* rustende & få rusten til at brede sig \* =

\* korrosion, tæring

\* rustende / rusten / =

\* ruste fast

\* fastrustet \* møtrik \* skive \* ruste \* helt fast

\* ruste ngt. væk

\* slibe ngt. \* rusten

\* tæring / rust

\* ~ rustbeskyttelses- \* behandling

\* ~ rustbehandle ngt.

\* rustbeskyttende

\* ~ rustbeskyttende

\* rustbeskyttelse

\* ~ nymalet

\* ~ skarpt aftegnet mod ngt.

## TENNIS

One day, Ollie's **has** a **visit from** a consultant.

' Just to **put / keep** you **in the picture** – there has been  
some changes here recently,' Ollie informs him and goes on,  
' Let's **take** a **look at** the **big picture** and forget the details.

**30** ' I **get** the **picture**,' the consultant answers **perceptively**,  
and adds a **penetrating** and **highly perceptive** comment.

' That's very **perceptive of** you **to** see it that way,'  
Ollie concludes.

\* have besøg af ng.

\* ~ gøre / holde ng. orienteret

\*

\* ~ se på det fulde perspektiv

\* ~ forstå situationen \* klart opfattende  
indsigtsfuld, indforstået

\* skarpsindig \* yderst ... ( kommentar )

\* << af ng. at -

\*

<b>1314</b> ' If your supplier hasn't replied by next week,	*		
you'll have to call them and <b>give</b> them a <b>prod</b> ,' the consultant	* give ng.		* prej, påmindelse
<b>reminds</b> Ollie.	* påminde ng.		
Not long ago the consultant has had to quit his job	*		
in the previous firm as he <b>had</b> a <b>stab</b> in the <b>back</b> .	* få en kniv i ryggen, blive faldet i ryggen		
A colleague has <b>stabbed</b> him <b>in the back</b> .	* ~ stikke en kniv i ryggen på ng., falde ng. i ryggen		
The consultant was sacked by the <b>executive manager</b>	* ~ administrerende >		* leder
even if the latter had <b>poked around / about in</b> the consultant's	* rode søgende rundt i ( et rum )		
office but found nothing <b>incriminating</b> .	* inkriminerende, ~ juridisk belastende		
<b>10</b> Just before this, the deceitful <b>middle manager</b> had been	* mellem-		* leder
noticed to have <b>poked</b> his <b>head around</b> the <b>door</b> to check	* stikke hovedet rundt ud af >		* døren
that nobody was coming before he had <b>poked</b> a message	* stikke ngt. >		
<b>under</b> the executive manager's door.	* ( ind ) under ( døren )		
An executive manager <b>executes</b> important decisions.	* udføre ( beslutning )		
Ollie <b>invites</b> the consultant <b>to</b> the tennis court.	* invitere ng. til ( et sted )		
He <b>invites</b> him <b>for</b> a game of tennis.	* - - - ( til en oplevelse )		
Although his tennis is a little <b>rusty</b> ,	* ~ ude af træning		
he <b>invites</b> the consultant <b>to</b> have a game of tennis with him.	* invitere ng. til at -		
Ollie <b>lends</b> him a tennis <b>racket</b> .	* låne ng. ngt.		* ketcher
<b>20</b> The consultant <b>borrow</b> s Ollie's best racket.	* låne ngt.		
A <b>clay court</b> has a <b>clay surface</b> .	* ler, ~ grus-	* bane	* ~ grusbelægning
<b>Rust-coloured</b> dust <b>comes off on</b> their tennis shoes.	* rustfarvet	* grus	* ~ smitte af på ngt.
After the match, tiredness is <b>etched on</b> their <b>faces</b> .	* ~ stå præget >		* i ngs. ansigt
Both their faces <b>are etched with</b> tiredness.	* ~ være mærket af ng.		
' <b>It's better to wear out than rust out</b> , though,' they agree.	* hellere slides op end ruste op		
Unemployment is having a <b>corrosive effect on</b> society,	* nedbrydende		* effekt / virkning på ng.
and <b>corrodes</b> the public <b>confidence in</b> the political system.	* nedbryde >		* tillid / tiltro til ng.
To <b>gratify</b> a certain <b>curiosity</b> of the consultant,	* tilfredsstille >		* nysgerrighed
Ollie <b>invites</b> questions <b>from</b> him.	* invitere til ( spørgsmål ) fra ng.		
<b>30</b> Ollie <b>pictures</b> his harrowing <b>experiences</b> so <b>vividly</b>	* skildre >	* oplevelse	* levende livagtigt
that the consultant <b>half-believes</b> he was there.	* halvvejs tro at -		
A trauma might leave a person with a <b>blurred</b> memory	* sløret ( erindring )		
but Ollie's memories <b>are</b> deeply <b>etched into</b> him.	* stå ( skarpt ) præget / sat sig dybe spor i ng.		
Everything <b>is etched on</b> his <b>memory</b> , <b>etched on</b> his <b>mind</b> ,	* ... i >	* hukommelse	* ... sind
and <b>etched on</b> his <b>heart</b> .	* ... " hjerte "		
Everything is <b>engraved on / in</b> his <b>memory</b> ,	* præget / prentet i >		* ngs. hukommelse
<b>engraved on / in</b> his <b>mind</b> , and <b>engraved on / in</b> his <b>heart</b> .	* - - - sind		* - - - " hjerte "

## CARVING and CARVINGS

**1315** The old manor has a some richly **carved** doors  
with a lot of interesting **carved work** in the form of both  
**intricate patterns** and **intricately carved** images.

The **carver** has **carved** / **chiseled** his initials **on** the door.

They use a variety of **chisels** when they **carve**.

**Carvers** may **carve** / **chisel in** both wood and stone.

**By cutting away** material from wood or stone in order to  
produce a relief, a figure, a sculpture or statue, a carver

**carves** or **chisels** a piece of wood or stone **into** the **shape of**  
**10** the **projected designs** for the patterns or images.

Many **carvers** have **carved** / **chiseled** Virgin Mary  
and Jesus Christ – **carved** / **chiseled** them **in** wood or stone.

Using **wood chisels**, **woodcarvers** skilled in **woodcarving**  
make **woodcarvings** such as **wooden images** in the form of  
**woodcuts** or wood(en) sculptures and wood(en) statues.

## STONE CUTTING / CARVING

Using **cold chisels**, **stone cutters** or **stone carvers**  
make **stone cuttings** or **stone carvings** – reliefs, sculptures  
and statues of sandstone, **limestone**, **marble** or **soapstone**.

**20** A stone cutter and perhaps his team of **cutters** may **cut** /  
**chisel** / **carve** a huge statue **out of** a single piece of stone.

A **sculptor** makes **sculptures** – works of art that are  
solid figures or objects made by carving or shaping wood,  
stone, clay, metal etc.

Sculptors may **sculpt** living beings or other objects.

Skilled in **sculpture**, they may **sculpt** a figure **in** marble.

They may **sculpt** it **from** a single block.

They may **sculpt** a **bust** **in** clay.

They may **sculpt** an **abstract out of shreds and patches**.

**30** A **stonemason**, **stoneworker** or **monumental mason** is  
`st  unmeisn  
occupied in **stonemasonry** / <work at a **stoneworks**.

Besides **cutting** and **dressing** stone, a monumental mason  
**cuts** / **chisels** **carves** / letters **on** stones.

Old crumbling **masonry** has begun to fall down.

So a **mason** builds up new **masonry** in the old wall.

Having acquired a knowledge of **masonry**,  
he **builds with** stone: natural stones, bricks, tiles etc.

\* billedsk  ring / -hugning \* udsk  ret / -hugget v  rk

\* udsk  ret

\* ~ billedsk  rerer \* arbejde

\* indviklede, detaljerige \* detaljerigt \* udsk  rne  
( m  nstre ) ( afbildninger )

\* billedsk  rerer \* udsk  re ngt. p   ngt.

\* mejsel / stemmejern \* udsk  re / -hugge

\* billedsk  rerer / -hugger \* sk  re, hugge / = i ngt.

\* udsk  re / -hugge ( materiale )

\*

\* udsk  re, udhugge / - - - ngt. til > \* formen p   >

\* p  t  nkte \* design for ( m  nstre / afbildninger )

\* udsk  re, udhugge / - - - ngt.

\* - - - ngt. i ( tr   etc. )

\* stemmejern \* tr  - / \* tr  - / billedsk  rerarbejde  
billedsk  rerer

\* tr  - / billedsk  rev  rk \* tr  - \* afbildning

\* tr  snit

\* ~ stenhugning / -sk  ring

\* ~ mejsel \* sten- \* hugger \* sten- \* sk  rerer

\* ~ stenhuggerv  rk \* ~ stensk  rerv  rk

\* lim- / kalksten \* marmor \* fedt- / kl  bersten

\* ( billed- ) hugger \*

\* udsk  re, -hugge / = ngt. af ngt.

\* skulpt  r \* skulptur

\*

\*

\* ~ lave skulptur af ngt.

\* skulpturering \* - - - af ngt. i ngt.

\* - - - af ngt. fra ngt.

\* ~ modellere > \* buste \* i ( ler )

\* ~ opbygge / udforme > \* abstrakt \* ~ stumper  
kunstv  rk og stykker

\* stenhugger \* = \* =

\* stenhugning \* = \* stenhuggeri

\* hugge ngt. \* tilhugge ngt.

\* indhugge / mejsle / indgravere ngt. p   ngt.

\* murerarbejde, murv  rk

\* murer \* =

\* murerh  ndv  rk

\* bygge med ngt.

**1316** A person may be a **Freemason** – a member of  
 a secret order – the **Free and Accepted Masons** – having  
 for one of its objects mutual assistance among its members.

The **Freemasonry** is kept secret.

There may be **freemasonry** (U) of a group of people.

\*

## POTTERY

Attending a pottery class, Sandra takes up **pottery**.

She takes classes in **pottery** and **ceramics**.  
sê`ramiks

**10** They learn how to make a piece of **pottery**,

a piece of **ceramics**, and a piece of **earthenware**.

In the **pottery** or **potter's shop**, there's a **potter's bench**  
 with a **potter's wheel**.

The wheel **plasters** Sandra and her clothes **with** wet clay  
 so she ends up **plastered in** clay **from head to foot**.

She often **plasters** her hands **with** hand **lotion**  
**in replacement of** the skin's natural **moisture**.

A **moisturizer** is a **moisturizing** lotion which **moisturizes**.

The **moisturizer** / E& <ser **moisturizes** / E& <ses the skin.

**20** **Stoneware** is made of clay that contains a small amount  
 of flint.

She puts **potter's clay** on the **revolving / throwing table**,  
**pokes** a **hole in** the clay and **throws** it **into** a round shape.

Having **shaped** the **clay into** a **dish, basin, bowl, pot, jar,**  
**jug, pitcher**, or **vase**, she may put handles on.  
vɑ:z / veiz / veis

In England a jug has a wide opening with a **lip** for **pouring**  
**liquids** while a pitcher is larger, has a smaller opening  
 and is used for holding liquids: in America it is **vice versa**.

She **bakes** the **pottery** in a **kiln** / a **potter's oven**.

**30** It gives a **jar** when a piece of pottery **jars** **against** another.

It **jars on the ear** too, when a door **jars on the hinges**,  
 and a window **jars in the frame**.

A **double-hung window** is a **sash window** which has  
 two **sashes** that slide vertically up and down in the frame.

A **sliding window** slides to the side.

\* frimurer

\* ~ frimurerordenen

\*

\* frimureriet

\* hemmelig broderskab  
 instinktiv forståelse

\* pottemageri

\* & pottemagerkunst \* keramikmageri / -kunst

\* lertøj

\* keramik

\* & fajance

\* pottemageri  
 / -værksted

\* pottemager-

\* bænk, bord

\* pottemagerhjul

\* tilsøle ngt. med

\* sølet ind i ngt.

\* ~ fra top til tå

\* indsmøre ngt. >

\* lotion

\* som erstatning for >

\* fugtighed

\* fugtighedskrem

\* -givende

\* give fugtighed

\* =

\* fugtiggøre ngt.

\* stentøj

\*

\* pottemager-

\* ler

\* ~ drejeskive

\* presse

\* hul i ngt.

\* dreje ngt. til ngt.

\* forme > \* ler \* til > \* fad \* skål \* skål \* potte \* krukke  
 kumme

\* kande

\* dunk

\* vase

\* tud

\* hælde >

\* væske

\* =

\* brænde >

\* pottemagevarer

\* pottemagerovn

\* skurren

\* skurre mod ngt.

\* skurre i ørerne

\* ... på >

\* hængsel

\* skurre i >

\* ramme

\* ~ dobbelt højsevindue

\* højsevindue

\* ~ højsevinduesfag

\* ~ skydevindue



<b>1317</b> They intend to make <b>exhibitions</b> of their <b>wares</b> ( pl. o-f )	* udstilling			* varer
including her <b>pottery</b> and <b>ceramic</b> art.	* lertøj			* keramik-
Most of the <b>ceramicware</b> is made of colour- <b>glazed pottery</b> .	* -vare	* glaseret		* pottemagerler
<b>Flower vases</b> are popular as most people appreciate	* blomster-			* vase
a vase of <b>cut flowers</b> .	* afskårne			* blomster
You can see a <b>salad bowl, fruit bowl, and sugar bowl</b> .	* salat-	* frugt-	* sukker-	* skål
<b>Earthen pots, jars</b> etc. are made of baked clay.	* ler-			* potte, krukke, kande
<b>Earthenware</b> as <b>earthenware pottery</b> and art work	* lertøj	* lertøjs-		* ~ pottemagervarer
are made of <b>hard baked</b> clay.	* hårdt			* bagt
<b>10</b> Jam is stored in <b>jam pots</b> and honey in <b>honey pots</b> .	* syltetøjskrukke			* honning-
In England <b>potted meat</b> and <b>potted fish</b> have been cooked	* henkogt kød			* ... fisk
and preserved in small containers.	*			
In the past, they used a <b>water jar</b> for carrying water.	* vandkrukke			
Today containers are made of materials like metal, glass ,	*			
porcelain and plastic.	*			
The <b>pots</b> and <b>pans</b> in the kitchen are made of metal.	* gryde			* pande, kasserolle
They use <b>waste</b> pots, jars and cartons for paint and brushes.	* affalds-			
For safe <b>packaging</b> , they <b>swathe</b> pottery in <b>corrugated</b>	* emballering	* svøbe / indhulle ngt. i >		* ~ bølge-
<b>cardboard</b> , put it in a box, and stuff it with <b>wood shavings</b> .	* pap	* træ-		* spåner
		~ høvlspåner		
<b>20</b> The factories use <b>foam packaging</b> .	* skum-	* emballering / emballage		
A family of art dealers have <b>carved</b> ( ) <b>up</b> their business	* ~ opdele ngt.			
for the benefit of each of the members involved.	*			
Sandra has a successful reputation and career as an artist.	*			
Her decisions are seldom <b>carved in stone</b> .	* mejslet i >			* sten
She never intended to <b>carve</b> a <b>career</b> in the art world,	* ~ tilkæmpe sig >	~ urokelig		* karriere
or <b>carve out</b> a place <b>for herself</b> .	* ... sin egen ( plads )			
At Christmas the family has <b>roast</b> turkey.	* stegt			
A turkey has a <b>wattle</b> .	* kalkunhals, hagelap			
The smell of the roast makes everybody's <b>mouth water</b> .	* ngs. ( mund ) ~ tænder			* løbe i vand
<b>30</b> Otis <b>carves</b> , and for <b>carving</b> the turkey,	* skære for			* skære ngt. for
he uses a <b>carving knife</b> and a <b>carving fork</b> .	* forskærer kniv			* -gaffel
( A <b>bread knife</b> may have a <b>serrated / wavy</b> { <b>blade / edge</b> . )	* brød- * kniv	* savtakket / bølget		* blad / ~ skær
Otis <b>carves</b> all the guests a piece of meat.	* udskære ng. ngt.			
Some people like to <b>gnaw</b> ( <b>at / on</b> ) a <b>thigh of</b> turkey.	* gnave ( af / på ) ngt.			* ( kalkun ) låre
A grown-up <b>carves</b> a small child their piece of meat.	* skære ng. ngt. ( ud i mindre stykker )			
They have a rich <b>moist</b> cake for dessert.	* fugtig			
The children <b>wipe</b> their <b>mouth on</b> the back of their hand	* tørre munden ( af ) på ngt.			
while the adults <b>wipe</b> their <b>mouth on / with</b> a serviette.	* - - - på / med ngt.			

## GARDENING

<b>1318</b> More <b>potty about</b> each other than ever, Sandra and Otis	* ~ småtosset med ng.
sometimes just spend the day <b>pottering about / around</b> .	* drysse / nusse omkring
<b>Pottering away</b> their <b>time</b> , they <b>potter around</b> the house,	* ~ drysse tiden bort * - - - ( i ) ng.
and <b>potter around in</b> the garden and the <b>potting shed</b> (E).	* & gå og rode i ng. * ~ plante- * skur
They have become <b>potty about</b> gardening.	* vild med ng.
The garden is surrounded by a <b>wattle fence</b> .	* vidje- / pileflet- * hegn
When <b>gardening</b> , they sometimes <b>stir</b> the <b>topsoil</b> .	* ~ lave havearbejde * rode op i ng. * overfladejord
When they dig in the soil with a <b>spade</b> , it may <b>jar on</b>	* spade * skurre mod >
<b>pot shards</b> or <b>sherds</b> of pottery, glass or metal.	* potte- * skår, stump * = shard
<b>10</b> They <b>potter with potted</b> /E& <b>pot plants</b> of many kinds.	* sysle med ng. * potte- * plante
<b>Potting plants</b> , they <b>pot</b> them in <b>flowerpots</b> and <b>jars</b> .	* potte > * plante * potte ( plante ) i > * ~ urte- * krukke potte
To keep the soil <b>moist</b> , they <b>water</b> their <b>potted plants</b>	* fugtig * vande > * potteplante
with a <b>watering can</b> /A& <b>pot</b> , or a <b>sprinkling can</b>	* vand- * kande * overbrusnings- * ( vand- ) kande
having a <b>spout</b> with a perforated <b>nozzle</b> .	* tud * mundstykke
They <b>feed</b> plants that need to be <b>fed</b> .	* ~ gøde ( plante ) * gødet
Burning some <b>garden refuse</b> E/A <b>yard waste</b> , Otis	* haveaffald
<b>goes off in a trance</b> even if the smoke makes his <b>eyes water</b> .	* ~ falde i trance / staver * øjnene > * ~ løbe i vand
<b>Daydreaming</b> , he seems <b>lost</b> in <b>reverie</b> / a <b>daydream</b> ,	* fortabt i > * drømmeri * dagdrøm
so Sandra gives him a <b>prod / poke in</b> the back to wake him up.	* puf / stød i ng.
<b>20</b> <b>Acid rain</b> may have <b>acidified</b> the soil in the garden.	* syre- (-holdig ) * regn * forsure ng.
Some flowers have diffent colours in <b>acidic</b> and <b>basic</b> soil.	* sur * basisk
<b>Potting compost</b> is good quality soil.	* potte- * kompost, ~ muld
The colour of some flowers indicates the <b>acidity</b> of the soil.	* surhed (-s) / -grad
The colour indicates that the soil has <b>acidified</b> .	* blive sur
<b>Waste gas</b> has caused strong <b>acidification</b> of air, soil,	* ~ røggas * forsureng
and waters, and caused much damage to nature.	*
‘ Thank you, ‘ Sandra says quite <b>acidicly</b>	* surt, syrligt
when she has had a bite of a fruit that was very <b>acidic</b> .	* sur, syrlig
On day when they hear some <b>moos</b> , they see the farmer	* muhen
<b>30</b> <b>prodding</b> and <b>goading</b> a couple of cows.	* drive ( dyr ) afsted
Using a <b>cattle prod / goad</b> , he <b>prods</b> , <b>jabs</b> and <b>pokes</b>	* kvægstav * prikke til > * støde til > * pufte til ng.
the cows to make them move forward.	*
Giving the cows a <b>sharp jab / prod / poke in</b> the <b>rump</b>	* hårdt * stød * prik * puf * i rumpen
<b>with</b> his prod / goad, he <b>drives</b> them into a <b>cattle transporter</b> .	* med ng. * drive ng. * kreatur- * transportvogn ( spidst )
Today much of the <b>butchery</b> is done at a <b>slaughterhouse</b>	* slagteri ( aflivning og udskæring ) * slagteri
or <b>abattoire</b> (E) where animals are <b>slaughtered / butchered</b> .	* slagte ( dyr )
The cows <b>moos</b> , unaware of their sad <b>destiny / fate</b>	* muhe * skæbne
<b>fast approaching</b> .	* hurtigt * komme nær ~ snarlig

## A VISIT

**1319** One afternoon, they are going to visit some friends.

When they arrive, nobody is **stirring** in the house.

They find their friends **pottering about** in the garden.

Their two boys play at **fencing with** a couple of sticks.

‘ Don’t **poke** an eye **out with** those sticks,’ a parent warns.

The hostess makes a **pot of frothing** coffee.

She **spoons** the **ground** coffee **into** the **filter bag**.

She uses a **spoonful** of coffee from the coffee **canister**

for each cup of coffee, and a **spoon** for the **coffee pot**.

**10** **Frothy** coffee has **froth** on top.

They **stir** the coffee with a **coffee spoon**.

**Instant** coffee are sold in coffee **jars** or coffee **bags**.

The husband begins **poking around / about in** a cupboard,  
looking for their holiday pictures / photographs.

So their friends give a **pictorial account / record** of  
their last journey; he had **whisked** her **off** to Paris.

The **have got** nice **pictures / photos** of their journey.

A **picture / photo** may be **blurred / out of focus**.

The **host** and **hostess** say that Otis and Sandra are

**20** welcome to eat with them but they have to **take pot luck**.

It’s **put luck** whether anything will be a success or not.

( In the US, they have a **potluck** when everyone invited  
brings some food to eat. )

They have some **leftover** meat from a beef **casserole**,  
and some **leftovers** (pl.) from a **pot roast** and a **pot of stew**.

( A **casserole ( dish )** is an **ovenproof** container with a lid,  
and used for making **casseroles** i.e. hot dishes with meat,  
vegetables etc. that are cooked in liquid in an oven.

A **roasting dish** is a flat shallow ovenproof container. )

**30** Having **cut** the beef **into** small **pieces**,

the host mixes all the leftovers together in a casserole.

While the casserole is in the oven **set to a high heat**,  
he **whips up** a **bowl of** salat.

Finally **stirring** the stew with a **wooden spoon**,  
he **stirs** some **thickener / thickening into** the stew.

He **stirs in** a few **teaspoonfuls** to **thicken** it.

He **stirs** continuously until the casserole **thickens**.

\*

\* bevæge / røre sig

\* nusse / pusle omkring

\* fægte med ngt.

\* stikke ( ngs. øje ) ud >

\* med ngt.

\* kande

\* skummende ( kaffe )

\* transportere ngt. med ske  
( + adv. / prep. )

\* malet  
( kaffe )

\* i > \* filterpose  
~ kaffefilter

\* skefuld

\* dåse

\* skefuld

\* kaffe-

\* ~ kande

\* skummende

\* skum

\* omrøre / røre rundt i ngt.

\* kaffeske

\* ~ pulver ( -kaffe )

\* krukke / glas

\* pose

\* rode rundt i ( skab )

\*

\* billedledsagende

\* beretning

\* ~ lige pludselig hive ng. et sted hen

\* have >

\* billeder / foto fra ngt.

\* billede / foto

\* sløret / ude af fokus

\* ~ værtsparet

\* ~ spise, hvad der er for hånden

\* ~ baseret på forhåbning

\* ~ sammenskudsmåltid

\*

\* levnet

\* ovnret

\* levninger

\* gryde-

\* steg

\* ~ gryderet

\* ~ stegesø, ovnfad m. låg

\* ~ ildfast

\* sammenkogt ret

\*

\* ~ stegefad

\* skære ngt. i >

\* ( små ) stykker

\*

\* sat til >

\* høj

\* varme

\* ~ knalde ( mad ) sammen

\* skål ( med ) ngt.

\* omrøre ngt., ~ røre rundt i ngt.

\* træ-

\* ske

\* røre >

\* jævning

\* ud / op i ngt.

fortykkelsesmiddel

\* ~ irøre >

\* teske (-fuld )

\* fortykke / jævne ngt.

\* røre rundt

\* ...s

**1320** Cooking pasta, the host **skims** ( ) **off** the **scum** (U).

**Skimming** the pasta, he **skims** the scum **off** the pasta.

He takes care not to **scald** himself **with** the steam.  
skå~ld

He **rinses** the pasta **with** cold water so it won't **stick**

and, giving it a slight **stir**, he **rinses** the scum **from** the pasta.

He opens a window as it's **like an oven** in the kitchen.

Using a pair of **oven gloves / mits**,

he takes the **burning hot** casserole out of the oven,

and puts it on a **heatproof dish mat** on the table.

**10** He can do with a pair of **pot / kettle holders**

when carries the hot pot of spaghetti.

It's a fact that when the host **whips** ( ) **off** his **apron**,  
and **drapes it over** the back a chair,

he has **whipped** ( ) **up** a delicious dinner in 20 minutes.

They use a **pair** of **tongs** for picking up the spaghetti.

They use a **ladle** with a large **bowl** for **ladling**  
the **scalding** ( **hot** ) casserole **on** top of the spaghetti.

Eating their food with a **tablespoon**,

the children **blow on** the first **piping hot spoonfuls**.

**20** People pass each other the **salt cellar** and **pepper pot** eE / \*  
eA the **salt shaker** and **pepper shaker**.

A **salt bowl** with a **salt spoon** is for **table use**  
and **salt box** in the kitchen contains **coarse** salt.

In an attempt to **whip** ( ) **up / incite / rouse** her children,  
the hostess **holds out prospect of** dessert **to** them  
if they **clear** the **table**.

Almost before she has finished her sentence,  
the children **whisk** ( ) **away** plates and **cutlery** E/A **flatware**.

Having poured **whipping cream** into the bowl of their

**30 electric whisk**, the hostess **whips** the **cream** until stiff.

Sometimes she uses an **egg beater**, a **whisk**, or a **fork**  
to **beat**, **whisk** and **whip** eggs or cream **to a froth**.

Having **stirred** some yolks, sugar, and **vanilla together**,  
she **stirs** the egg **paste gently into** the **whipped cream**.

A can /E& tin of mixed fruits is **shared out** on dessert plates  
where each portion is topped with the **frothy** mixture.

They eat the **vanilla cream dessert** with **dessertspoons**.

\* skumme ngt. af \* ( uønsket ) skum

\* skumme ngt. \* skumme ngt. af ngt.

\* skolde ng. \* med ( damp )

\* skylle ngt. med ngt. \* klæbe

\* omrøring \* skylle ngt. af / væk fra ngt.

\* som ( i ) en bageovn

\* ovnhandsker

\* brand- \* varm

\* ~ ildfast \* ~ bordskåner

\* ~ grydelap

\*

\* ~ flå ngt. af sig \* forklæde

\* ~ hænge ngt. over ngt.

\* ~ hurtigt frembringe ngt. / stable ( måltid ) på benene

\* ~ tang

\* øse, øseske, potageske \* fordybning \* øse ngt. >  
( med øseske )

\* skoldhed ( flydende substans ) \* på ngt.

\* skoldende ( varm )

\* spiseske

\* puste på ngt. \* ~ rygende \* varm \* skefuld

\* peberbøsse \* saltbøsse

\* =

\* salt- \* skål, kar \* salt- \* ske \* bord- \* brug

\* saltkar \* groft ( salt )

\* ~ opildne ng.

\* ~ stille ng. ngt. i udsigt

\* rydde ( af ) > \* bordet

\*

\* ~ lige med et fjerne ngt. \* bestik \* bestik

A: knive

\* ~ piske- \* fløde

\* ~ elpisker \* piske > \* fløde

\* ~ piskeris \* = \* gaffel

\* ~ piske > \* piske > \* piske ngt. > \* til skum

\* røre ngt. sammen \* vanilje

\* røre > \* ( ægge- ) pasta \* op / ud i > \* ~ flødeskum

\* fordelt ud

\* skumagtig

\* vanilje \* flødeskun \* dessert \* dessertske  
~ råcreme

**1321** Making a **pot of** tea to **go with** the fruit **whip**, the host  
put five **teaspoon**(**<ful**)s ( tps ) of tea in a large **teapot**.

Those who **take** milk and sugar **in** their tea pour milk from  
a **milk jug** E/A **pitcher**, and spoon sugar from a **sugar bowl**.

They **stir** the tea with a **teaspoon**.

They **stir** the milk and sugar **into** their tea.

They **stir in** milk and sugar until the sugar has **dissolved**.

As everybody joins in, they **whip through** the dish washing.

Ending up playing cards, they all put money in a **pool**,

**10** and after each game, one of them wins **the pot / kitty**.

Even if Sandra and Otis had **pots of money**, they'd never

**put the pot on** /E& **lashed out on** anything in gambling.

You may now and then **win the jackpot** in some

**games of chance** but to win the jackpot in the national lottery

is a **crock / pot of gold**.

‘ When I met my wife, I **hit the jackpot**, ‘ Otis adds.

Talking about going **shooting**, they **lash ( out at )** / criticize  
a **whippersnapper** for **potting the game**.

He always **takes a pot shot at** the game.

**20** The fact is that he can't even **pot a sitting duck / target**.

It's getting late when the host gets the **poker** in order

**to poke / stir** the fire **for the last time**.

They have drunk three **pots of** tea.

Rain suddenly **pelts** the windows: its **pelting down** outside.

**Lashing / hammering / pounding at** the windows,

heavy rain **lashes / hammers / pounds against** the panes.

**There's a pelting rain: rain is coming down in buckets**.

The wind **beats** the **rain in** Sandra and Otis' faces,

as they **pelt out** to their car parked **in / on the drive** (<way )

**30** As the wind **whips** Sandras hair **around** her face,

her hair **whips into** her eyes.

As Otis **backs** the car **out**, and they **back out** of the drive,

a branch **whips across** the **side window**.

While rain **lashes against** the **windscreen** E/A **windshield**,  
the ( windscreen / windshield ) **wipers** have a hard time

**wiping ( ) off** the **pelting rain, whipping across** the window.

The wind **whips** the rain **across** all the windows.

\* potte / kande ( te ) \* ~ høre sammen med > \* ~ fromage  
\* teskefuld \* tekande

\* ~ drikke ( te ) med ( ng. ) / bruge ( ng. ) i ( teen )

\* mælke- \* kande \* sukker- \* skål

\* omrøre ng. med > \* teske

\* ~ røre rundt i ng. med ng.

\* røre ng. i ng.

\* = \* ~ gå i opløsning

\* ~ stryge igennem ( opvask )

\* pulje

\* den endelige pulje

\* ~ masser af penge

\* ~ sætte / bruge en masse penge på ng.

\* vinde jackpot / den største gevinst

\* ~ hasardspil

\* krukke / potte guld, ~ urealistisk forventning om stor belønning

\* ~ få jackpot / den store gevinst

\* jagt til fods \* kritisere, ( lange ud efter ) ng.

\* ung, ubetydelig vigtig \* bare plaffe på > \* jagtvildt / -prås

\* ~ fyre et usportsligt / dårligt sigtet skud af mod ng.

\* ramme > \* ~ nemt mål

\* ilddrager

\* rode op i ( ild ) \* for sidste gang

\* potter ( af ) ng.

\* piske ( mod ) ng. \* øse ned

\* piske / hamre mod ng.

\* - = -

\* ~ det er øsende regn \* ~ det regner i spandavis

\* slår > \* regn \* i ( hovedet på ng. )

\* styrtede ud \* i / på > \* indkørsel

\* piske ng. omkring ng.

\* ~ slaske ind i ng.

\* bakke ng. ud ( vt: altid m. adv. ) \* bakke ud ad / af ng. ( vi: altid m. adv. )

\* slaske tværs over > \* side- \* ~ rude

\* piske mod > \* forrude

\* ( vindues- ) visker

\* viske bort ⇔ ng. \* piskende \* regn \* piske hen > over ng.

\* piske ng. hen over ng.

## GOING SHOPPING

### DOING THE / THEIR SHOPPING (E)

**1322** In the morning, **it's** still **pouring** outside.

( The ) **rain** still **pours down**.

**It's pouring** ( **with** ) **rain** E/A **it's pouring** ( **down** ) **rain**

so Otis and Sandra **put up** their **umbrellas**.

They are careful not to **poke** anyone **in** their **eye**.

The local **grocer took pot`luck** when he took over  
the **grocer's**, the **grocery** or **grocery store** (eA).

It's **pot luck** whether he can **keep the pot boiling**  
and prevent the project from **going to pot**.

**10** Although he doesn't expect a **crook / pot of gold**,  
he hopes for a **thriving** business in the **general store**(<s E&)

The **jovial** grocer is a **pot`bellied** man who's **joviality**,  
`dʒeuviəl  
helpfulness and willingness **arouse** much **sympathy**.

Mentioning his **pot** or **pot`belly** inside his tight **overall**,  
he jokingly says it's like **putting a quart into a pint pot** (E).

As one of his **peculiarities** and **peculiar** habits,  
he likes to wear a **gaily coloured bow tie** that **jars / clashes**  
**with** the rest of the outfit.

His bow tie and the rest his outfit **jar / clash**.

**20** He's up and **in full swing** before the others begin **stirring**.

New optimism is **stirring** throughout the county.

At the grocer's they buy **groceries** : a **carton** of milk,  
some **pots** or **cartons** of **plain** or **fruity** yog(h)urt / yoghourt,  
a **packet** of **porridge / rolled oats**, a **packet** of **margarine**,  
a **tub** of butter, a **plastic bottle** of ketchup,  
a **tube** of mayonaise, a **bag** of remoulade, etc

They usually drink **skim`milk** / E& **skimmed`milk**.

At the **dairy** they **skim whole milk**.

`dēeri  
They **skim** the cream **from** the **full-cream milk**.

**30** They buy an **oven`ready** chicken at the **butcher's**.

On their way home Sandra and Otis often take a **jar** (E)

~ a glass of ( **frothing** ) beer ( with a good **head of foam** )  
`frɑ#ing  
~ a glass of ( **foaming** ) beer ( with thick **froth** on top ).

In the evening Sandre and Otis just **stir** an **omelet** A/E <te,  
and **stir-fry** thin **strips** of vegetables and meat.

Otis **wipes** his plate **clean** with a peace of bread.

If a meal is **ready cooked**, it's a **ready-cooked** meal.  
...`...

\* det øser ned

\* regn >

\* øse ned

\* ~ det øser ned

\* slå paraply op

\* stikke ng. >

\* i øjet

\* købmand

\* ~ tage, hvad der kommer  
og håbe på det bedste

\* købmand, (-s) -handel / -butik

\* <<

\* & holde sagerne  
/ økonomien i gang

\* gå i vasken

\* usandsynlig præmie / belønning

\* livlig

\* købmmandshandel  
( med bredt udvalg i mindre by )  
\* & gemytlighed

\* ~ tykmavet

\* vække >

\* sympati

\* ~ topmave, vom

\* kittel

\* ~ anbringe ngt., hvor der ikke er plads  
( a pint is one half of a quart and 1/ 8 of a gallon )

\* mærkværdighed

\* mærkværdig

\* livlig \* koloreret

\* butterfly

\* skurre >

~ spraglet

\* ~ imod ngt.

\* skurre mod hinanden

\* i fuld sving

\* røre på sig

\* røre på sig

\* købmandsvarer

\* karton

\* bæger

\* =

\* ren

\* frugt- ( yoghurt )

\* pakke

\* ~ havregryn

\* pakke

\* margarine

\* bakke ( smør )

\* plastik-

\* flaske

\* tube

\* pose

\* skummet mælk

\* mejeri

\* skumme ngt.

\* ~ sødmælk

\* skumme ngt. fra ngt.

\* ~ sødmælk

\* ovnklar

\* slagter / -forretning

\* ~ krus øl

\* topskumme

\* ~ top

\* skum

\* skumme

\* skum

\* røre ngt.

\* & æggekage

\* lynstege ngt.

\* strimmel

\* tørre ngt. rent

\* færdig-

\* tilberedt

\* færdigtilberedt ( måltid )

## A ROAD ACCIDENT

**1323** Sandra one day goes to the village on her bike.

A street in the village is **in a bad / poor state of repair**.

Suddenly Sandra feels a slight **jar** when she's hit

by a **wobbling** cyclist trying to **circumvent** a **pothole**.

The jar **knocks / throws** her **off balance**.

As she **loses** her **balance**, her bike **spills / unseats** her.

She **has a** nasty **fall with** her bicycle.

Her **taking a spill** ( **on** her bike ) **gives** her a nasty **jar**.

The fall seems to **jar** every bone in her body.

**10** There is a great **stir**; the crowd is **in a stir**.

**Stirring up** people's **feelings**, **stirring** their **hearts**,

Sandra's bad condition **stirs universal pity**.

The **poor repair** of the roads **stirs up discontent**(**<ment**).  
- `tent

Feeling a **stabbing** pain, she is rushed to the hospital.

Sandra has an anti-**tetanus jab** / shot / injection  
`tetênês

The alarming news **gives** the whole family a **jar**.

The bad news **jars** Sandra's mother; tears **scald** her **eyes**.

Her eyes are **moist** as **scalding** tears pour down her face.

**Wiping** her **eyes**, **wiping** ( ) **away** the **tears**,

**20** she **wipes** her eyes **on** the back of her hand.

Having **pulled out** a handkerchief, she keeps **sniffing**

and **wiping** her **eyes** and **nose with** her handkerchief.

Otis doesn't **stir from** the chair **by** Sandras **bedside**.

In the morning, though, a noise **stirs** him **from** sleep.

When the **screeches** of the birds **stir the silence**,

she fortunately wakes up with a faint **smile stirring** her **lips**.

Her lips **moisten** with difficulty as she **moistens** her lips

before speaking.

Otis **is at** her **bedside** throughout her stay at the hospital.

**30** She has broken a finger **in** the **spill** but apart from that  
she is relatively **unharméd, unhurt** and **uninjured**.

The doctor **repairs** her **wounds** and applies **plaster(s)** (E):  
**sticking plasters** (E) or **Band-Aids** (E/A).

A broken finger is provided with a **cast**: a **plaster cast**  
made of **plaster of Paris**, which is made of **gypsum**.

A simple treatment will **repair** her **wounds**.

Her finger **in plaster** and her body in a **mass** of **bruises**,  
she **repairs** her **general condition** by a few days **rest**.

\*

\* ~ i dårlig / ringe vedligeholdelsestilstand

\* stød

\* slingre \* komme udenom > \* ~ stort nedslidt hul

\* ~ skubbe ng. ud af balance

\* miste > \* balancen \* kaste ng. af

\* komme ud for ( grimt ) et fald \* med ( cykel )  
fra ng.

\* - - - fald ( på cykel ) \* give ng > \* et ( grimt ) stød

\* ryste ng.

\* opstandelse \* i uro / bevægelse / opstandelse  
ståhej

\* ophidse / antænde > \* følelser \* røre > \* hjerte

\* vække ngs. \* almindelig \* medfølelse

\* dårlig \* vedligeholdelse \* vække > \* utilfredshed

\* stikkende ( smerte )

\* stivkrampe- \* stik

\* give ng. > \* chok

\* chokere / ryste ng. \* svie i > \* øjne

\* fugtig ( af tårer ) \* svidende ( tåre )

\* tørre > \* øjne \* tørre ( tårer ) væk

\* tørre ng. ( af ) på ng.

\* tage ng. frem \* snøfte

\* tørre ( øjne og næse ) med ng.

\* røre sig fra ng. \* ~ ved ngs. seng

\* forstyrre / vække ng. fra ng.

\* skrig \* bryde tavsheden

\* smil > \* røre sig på ngs. læber

\* blive fugtig \* fugte ng.

\*

\* være ved ngs. seng

\* i faldet

\* uskadt

\* behandle > \* sår \* plaster

\* hæfteplaster \* =

\* gipsbandage \* =

\* ( brændt ) gips \* ( ubrændt ) ...

\* ~ få ( sår ) til at hele

\* i gips \* masse af > \* stød mærke

\* genoprette / -vinde > \* almene \* tilstand \* hvile

**1324 Not damaged beyond repair,**

the bike is not **irreparable**.

i`repêrêbl

As it's **repairable**, Otis takes it to a **bicycle repair shop**.

`repearêbl

As it isn't **past repair** and it's worth having it repaired,

the **bicycle repairer** takes the bike in for repair.

The **repairman** repairs the bike.

He has to **scrap** the **buckled** front wheel,

and replace the **front fork** and the **mudguard** E/A **fender**.

The **sparkling** new **spokes** connect the **hub** with the **rim**.

**10** Otis buys a **repair outfit**.

He **keeps** their bikes in repair.

The accident **caused** quite a **stir**.

The accident **stirs** the **question** of **street** and **road repairs**,  
and why the streets and roads are not **kept in repair**.

Many of the streets and roads **are in bad / poor repair**.

Numerous complaints about streets **in need of repair**

haven't yet **stirred** the county council **into action / to act**.

The tasks of the council **are a question of priority / <ies**.

The county council **puts the tasks in order of priority**.

**20** The voters must **stir in the matter** if they want the county  
council to **give a task a high / top priority**.

Such accident **stirs correspondents** to write

**letters to the editor**.

So creating a **stir** in the press, a headline reads,

' **Stir yourself – Get your priorities right** E/A **straight !** '.

Designed to **whip () up / rouse** public **opinion**,

the **reader's letters stir () up** widespread public **anger**.

The campaign must have **stirred** the **conscience of**  
the council as they soon **give a top priority to** the task.

**30** Street and road repair is **top on the list of tasks**.

**Taking priority over** all other tasks, **it's a top priority**.

' It's a task **with a top priority**,' the council proclaims,  
not without being suspected of **vote catching**.

Some politicians **angle for votes**,

by **taking pot()shots** at their opponents.

Having **taken a pot()shot** at his opponent

a politician is criticized for **not stirring a finger** himself.

\* ~ så beskadiget at ngt. ikke kan repareres

\* ~ ude af stand til at blive repareret

\* ~ til at reparere \* cykel- \* ~ værksted

\* << \* det er værd at få ngt. > \* repareret

\* ~ cykelsmed \* tage ngt. > \* til reparation

\* reparationsmand \* reparere ngt.

\* kassere / smide ngt. væk \* ekset

\* forgaffel \* ~ skærm

\* funklende \* ege \* nav \* fælg

\* reparationssæt

\* ~ vedligeholde ngt.

\* forårsage > \* opstandelse / ståhej

\* rejse > \* spørgsmålet vedr. > \* ~ vejarbejde

\* holde ngt. > \* i stand

~ vedligeholde ngt.

\* i dårlig / elendig stand

\* som trænger til reparation

\* sætte ng. i gang \* få ng. til at > \* handle

\* være et spørgsmål om > \* prioritering / -er  
~ prioriteringsspørgsmål

\* lægge > \* sag \* rækkefølge efter > \* forrang  
~ prioritere opgaverne

\* ~ gøre noget ved sagen

\* give en opgave > \* høj / top- prioritet  
~ prioritere en opgave højt / højst

\* opildne > \* læserbrevsskribent \* til at -

\* læserbrev

\* vække > \* røre / opsig / sensation i ( pressen )

\* ~ mande sig op \* få sine prioriteter på rette plads

\* oppiske / opvække > \* ( offentlig ) mening

\* ~ læserbrev \* vække > \* vrede

\* ~ vække \* ngs. samvittighed

\* give topprioritet / forrang til ngt.  
& give ngt. ...

\* ~ øverst på listen over ngt.

\* ~ have forrang fremfor ngt. \* være topprioritet

\* med topprioritet

\* ~ stemmefiskeri

\* fiske efter stemmer

\* ~ rette udokumenteret kritik mod ng.

\* - = -

\* ikke røre en finger



**1325** So a **road gang** is **hired to repair** all the roads and streets **full of holes**.

Where the **roadmenders** or **navvies** (E&) are working, a sign says , ' **Road Up** ' or ' **Road under Repair** . '

Having heavy **rollers** that **compact** the road material, a **road roller**, as a **steamroller** in the old days, is used to **roll** an **uneven road surface flat** and **compact**.

If a road is **temporarily under repair**, there may be a **diversion** E/A **detour** and **diversion / detour signs**.

**10** A road and a bridge will remain closed until

**essential repair work** has been **carried out**.

As the bridge is closed **during repairs**, the traffickers have to **make a detour / diversion** by **taking a diversion** E/A a **detour**.

The county council hope to have **repaired the omission**.

People may **make a detour / diversion** to visit a place now by roads **in good repair / in a good state of repair** whether they are **asphalted** roads or **gravelled** roads.

\*

**20** AN EXHIBITION [ eks`hibi\$en ]

Having been **knocking** ( ) **around / E about** a plan, Sandra and Otis have been thinking about an idea, and discussed a plan to **exhibit** their works of art together.

So having decided on a **joint exhibition**,

Sandra and Otis prepare a **pictorial** catalogue.

Ollie **takes** some **pictures / photos of** Sandra and Otis.

Sandra and Otis **have** their **picture taken** in front of the mill.

The **picture** on the cover of the catalogue **shows** Sandra and Otis in front of the **picture-postcard** old mill.

**30** Writing an article about his sister and brother in law,

Ollie **endeavourous** not to **paint a rosy** or **false picture of** any of them.

The article **paints / portrays** them **as public-spirited entrepreneurs**.

**Painting** a vivid **picture of** both of them, the article **paints** a vivid **picture of** their **public-spirited** acts.

\* ~ vejarbejdersjak \* hyret til at - \* reparere ( vej )

\* & hullet

\* ~ vejarbejder

\* =

\* ~ vejarbejde

\* tromle \* komprimere / sammenpresse ( materiale )

\* vejtrumle

\* damptrumle

\* tromle > \* ujævn \* vejbelægning / \* flad \* kompakt  
-overflade

\* midlertidig \* under reparation / istandssættelse

\* omkørselsvej \* omkørsels- \* skilt

\*

\* grundlæggende \* reparationsarbejde \* udføre ngt. nødvendig

\* under > \* reparationerne

~ medens reparationene / istandsættelsen står på

\* foretage en omkørsel

\* tage en omkørselsvej

\* genoprette >

\* det forsømte & undladelssynd

\* foretage en afvigelse

\* i god vedligeholdelsestilstand

\* asfalteret ( vej )

\* grus (-belagt ) ( vej )

\*

\* tumle med ( en plan )

\*

\* udstille ngt.

\* fælles

\* udstilling

\* billedeinkluderende

\* tage billede / foto af ngt.

\* få sit billede taget

\* billede viser ngt.

\* ~ malerisk

\*

\* bestræbe sig på at - \* male > rosenrødt / falsk billede af ngt.

\*

\* portrættere ng. som ngt.

\* samfundssindet

\* igangsætter

\* ~ tegne >

\* ( levende ) billede af ng.

\* - - \* ... af ngt.

\* samfundssindet ( gerning )

1326 The day of the **preview** of the **exhibition** comes.

**Applying make-up**, Sandra **paints** her **lips** **rosy**.

Having **put on make-up**, she has **done** her **make-up**.

**Having make-up on**, just **wearing** light **make-up**,

Sandra finally **paint** her **nails** **rosy**.

The old mill has a **chimney**.

Tom has decorated the **chimney** / E& **chimney** **stack**.

The flags and **ribbons** **flaunt** in the wind.

A ( **chimney** ) **sweep** cleans **chimneys**.

10 One of the guests has **mistaken** the time.

' **Aren't you a bit previous** ? ' the **exhibitor** asks.

The music comes from a **stack** hi-fi system.

There was an electrical **defect** / **fault** in a connection

so the **defective** / **faulty** connection had to be **replaced**.

They have brought a lot of **stacking** chairs

which **stack** when not in use.

A tables is **stacked with** glasses and plates.

It's an **inviting** sight, and it gives an **inviting** smell.

There is a selection of differently **processed** cheeses.

`prêusest /A& `prâ~

20 Most of the food we buy today is **processed** in some way.

Some guests **display** their wealth **with** much **ostentation**.

Some **new rich** guests are **ostentatiously** dressed,

wearing **showy** clothes and **ostentatious jewellery**

`dju~êlri

while others display an **ostentatious** simplicity of their dress.

One of the **new rich** is in **pictures**.

Collecting **paintings** and other **pictures** by various artists,

some of the guests collect **oil paintings**, **acrylic paintings**,

**watercolours**, **drawings**, **sketches**, **etchings**,

and **photo(graph)s** both in **black and white** and **colour**.

30 ( **Black-and-white** and colour photos. )

An **art dealer** or **picture dealer** from an **art shop**

or **art gallery** may buy some **works of art**.

Most artists probably hope to make works of art that

**pack a** ( hard / hefty / powerful / real / strong etc. ) **punch** /

that **pack a wallop**.

\* forhåndsyn af > \* udstilling \* oprinde

~ fernisering

\* påføre / \* make-up \* male > \* læber \* rosa

~ lægge >

\* - = -

\* have > \* make-up \* på \* bære > \* ( let ) ...

\* male > \* negle \* rosa

\* skorsten

\* ( ydre ) skorsten

\* pyntebånd \* flagre, vaje, vifte

\* skorstensfejer \* ( indre ) skorsten

\* tage fejl af ngt.

\* ... tidligt på den \* udstiller

\* stabel-

\* defekt / fejl i ( forbindelse )

\* defekt, fejlbehængt ( = ) \* skifte ngt. ud

\* ~ som kan stables

\* ~ kan stables

\* stablet fuld af ngt.

\* indbydende

fristende, lokkende

\* forarbejdet

\* forarbejde / tilvirke ngt.

\* vise / udstille ngt. \* med ( megen ) tilstræbthed

/ ~ brask og bram

\* nyrige \* tilstræbt påfaldend

prangende, pralende

\* = \* = \* smykkeudstyr

~ smykker

\* tilstræbt, tilsyneladende

\* de nyrige \* i filmbranchen

\* maleri \* billede \* ( lavet ) af ng.

\* olie- \* maleri \* akryl- \* =

\* akvarel \* tegning \* skitse \* radering

\* foto (-grafi ) \* ~ sort-hvid \* farve

\* ... ( foto )

\* kunst- \* handler \* maleri- \* handler \* kunst- \* handel

\* kunst- \* galleri \* værk ⇔ \* kunst

\*

\* rumme > \* nævestød

~ ( kraftig / voldsom / rigtig / stærkt ) indtryk

\* ... > \* kraftigt slag

**1327** A **source of irritation** when having a conversation  
is when **chatterboxes** intrude.

There is a **jarring note of triumph** in their voice  
when some of them display their **know-it-all** attitude.

Most of their **chatter** has, however, too much **froth**,  
and not enough **fact** (U).

**Frothily jabbering / babbling / gabbling away**, people  
love to **jabber about** whatever they **have** most **at heart**.

People's either **frothy** or **nonsensical jabber**  
**10 jars on the ears** of both Sandra and Otis.

It sometimes **jars on** their **nerves**.

It **jars on** their **feelings** when people don't respect privacy.

Some people love to **boast about** their achievements.

Some **boasters brag about** their wealth.

They may **brag that** they are **destined to** be privileged.

'I'm **predestined to** live in luxury,' one of them **brags**.

'I was born to indulge in luxury,' he **jabbers**.

A **bragger** loves to **brag to** everybody.

A **braggart** loves to **brag to** everybody **about** anything.

**20** A **flaunter**, likewise, loves to **flaunt** his **riches** (pl.),  
**show off** his expensive car, and **flaunt** his fine clothes  
**It is discouraged**.

A **bragging** young man **brags that** he's got a lot of talent.

The **flaunty** braggart even **flaunts** his **vices** openly.

He **braggingly, flauntingly, and flauntily** reveals his affairs.

He has **invited** a young woman **to** go on holiday with him.

'If you've got it, **flaunt it**,' he **brags**.

He openly **exhibits** his bad manners.

He **makes** an **exhibition of himself**.

**30** Some children's behaviour **invites** trouble too  
as they may be skilled in **diversionary tactics**.

**Packing** () **off** an unruly child ( **from** the room ),  
the flaunter **banishes** the child ( **to** the **outside** ).

Having promised to calm down, the child **proceeds to**  
**barge about, making a noise** and touching the **exhibits**.  
ig' zibits

Tolerant **to a fault**, the child's parents hesitate to

**banish** the child **from** the **show room**,

and **pack** him **off to** the outside.

\* kilde til > \* irritation  
~ irritationsmoment  
\* sludrechatol, -bøtte  
snakkemaskine  
\* skurrende / irriterende \* tone / skær af ngt.  
\* bedrevidende  
\* snakken, knebren \* ~ tom underholdning  
\* faktualitet, virkelighed  
\* plabre / knebre løs  
\* ... om ngt. \* have ( mest ) på hjertet  
\* ~ tomt underholdende \* forvrøvlet \* plabren /  
knebren  
\* skurre > \* i ørerne på ng.  
& i ngs. ører  
\* ~ gå ng. på nerverne  
\* ~ støde ng.  
\* prale af ngt.  
\* =  
\* prale af / med at - \* bestemt til at -  
\* forudbestemt til at - \* sige / udbryde pralende  
\* knebre  
\* pralhans \* prale overfor ng.  
\* pralhans / -hals / -røv \* prale til ng. om ngt.  
\* pralhals \* prale af / med ngt. \* rigdomme  
parademager  
\* paradere / stoltse / \* =  
vigte sig med ngt.  
\* ~ det opfordres der imod, det er uglest / ikke velset  
\* pralende, pralrisk \* prale af / med at -  
\* pralrisk \* stille ngt. til skue \* last, synd  
vigte sig af ngt. umoralsk opførsel  
\* pralrisk  
\* invitere ng. til at -  
\* du skal ikke sætte dit lys \* sige / udbryde pralende  
under en skæppe  
\* udstille ngt.  
\* ~ gøre sig uheldigt bemærket  
\* invitere til ngt.  
\* aflednings- \* taktik, metode  
\* sende ng. væk ( fra ngt. )  
\* forvise ng. ( til ngt. ) \* udenfor  
\* fortsætte med at -  
\* buse omkring \* lave larm \* udstillingsgenstand  
\* ( ngt. positivt ) i høj / urimelig grad  
\* forvise ng. fra ngt. \* udstillingslokale  
\* sende ng. afsted til ngt.

* praleri	* =	* stillen til skue
* invitere ( til ) ngt.	* demonstrativ	vigten sig * gab
* * * ordentlig, proper		* pralende
* prale af / med ngt.		
* ( frækt ) stille ngt. til skue		
* exhibitionist		
* exhibitionisme		
* fremvise / udvise ngt.		
* anmelder		
* invitere / anmode ng. om		
* anmode om ngt. fra ng.		
* overskud / provenu fra >		
* fra ngt.	* gå til at -	* udstyre / indrette >
* købe ngt. med >		* mørkekammer * overskud
* fremkalde ( film )		
* -lse		
* billed-	* kunst-	* galleri
* * billedsalg		* kunstsalg
* auktion over ngt. ( ~ maleri- / kunstauktion )		
* auktionshus		* på auktion
* komme på ...		
* holde ...		* auktionslokale
* auktionarius		* lede ...
* nummer, portion		
* * byde ng. for ngt.		
* byde mod ng.		
* komme med >		* bud for ngt.
* * byde ( ng. ) for ngt.		
r. * bud		* byder ( den højest bydende )
* ~ dødsbo		
* bortauktionere ngt., lade ngt gå på auktion ( auktionere ngt. fra )		
* * komme under hammeren	* indbringe ngt.	* ved ...

1329 Another quite <b>noteable</b> guest is called Al.	* bemærkelsesværdig
He's <b>not as black as</b> he has <b>been painted</b> , though.	* ikke så slem, som man bliver gjort til
The only <b>jarring note at</b> his <b>reputation</b> was his <b>casting</b> /	* mislyd ved > * omdømme * kaste >
<b>spreading</b> his <b>net</b> ( far and wide ) in search of women.	* sprede > * net ~ være ude med nettet / have sine garn ude
He has now <b>stopped casting</b> / <b>spreading</b> his <b>net</b> .	* holde op med at- * =
Sandra and Otis are neither <b>content</b> nor <b>satisfied with</b>	* tilfreds med ngt.
a <b>potted</b> (E) version of his holiday with his new girlfriend, Ann.	* nedkogt, forkortet
She <b>finished commercial college</b> ( A& business college )	* afslutte > * handelsskole
last year, but her boyfriend kept <b>devaluing</b> her <b>work</b> .	* nedvurdere > * arbejde di~`valjuing
10 Feeling <b>slighted</b> by his <b>disparagement</b> ,	* føle sig > * ringeagtet * nedvurdering
she took his unforgivable <b>disparaging</b> and <b>slighting</b> remarks	* nedvurderende * ringeagtende
as a <b>slight on</b> both her and her <b>achievement</b> .	* ringeagtelse af ng&t. * præstation, bedrift
As he kept <b>running</b> ( ) <b>down</b> / <b>disparaging</b> / <b>belittling</b> her	* nedvurdere ng&t.
and her achievement, and kept <b>speaking disparagingly</b>	* tale > * nedvurderende >
and <b>slightingly</b> about her and her achievement,	* ringeagtende om ng. / ngt.
she <b>broke</b> ( off ) <b>with</b> him / E& <b>finished with</b> him.	* slå op med ng.
Having met Al, she was invited to his summer house.	*
' Lets <b>repair to</b> the coast, ' he said suggestingly.	* begive sig / søge til ( et sted ) ( form. / hum. )
On their way to the beach they had passed a <b>meadow</b> :	* eng
20 a <b>water meadow</b> newly <b>washed</b> over.	* ... , der oversvømmes * overskyllet
Walking along the <b>beach</b> along the <b>water's edge</b> ,	* strand * vandkant
they stopped to <b>play ducks and drakes</b> , that is to say	* lege > * ænder * andrikker ~ slå smut
they <b>skipped</b> / E& <b>skimmed stones</b> ( over the water )	* ~ slå smut med > * sten * hen over ngt.
so the stones <b>skipped</b> / <b>skimmed</b> ( over ) the <b>dead calm</b> sea.	* stryge hen over ngt. * ~ blik stille ( hav ) ~ slå smut på ngt.
They watched a <b>flock of webfeet</b> ( birds with <b>webbed feet</b> )	* flok * ~ svømmefugl * ~ fødder m. svømmehud ( & svømmefødder )
<b>resting</b> on the beach, and in the <b>shallow</b> waters.	* hvile sig * lav
Alarmed by human beings, and having <b>spread</b> their <b>wings</b> ,	* sprede > * vingerne
the <b>flight</b> of <b>web-footed</b> birds <b>skimmed</b> ( over ) the sea.	* flok af * ~ årefodet ( fugl ) * stryge hen over ( hav ) ( ~ svømmefugl )
30 A stream <b>hindered</b> Al and Ann <b>from getting along</b> / on.	* hegn * hindre ng. i * komme videre
In order to <b>get across</b> / <b>over</b> the stream, they had to find	* komme ( tværs ) over ngt.
a narrow place where to <b>jump</b> ( across / over ) the stream.	* hoppe ( tværs ) over ngt.
The storm had <b>washed</b> ( ) <b>out</b> some of the <b>embankment</b>	* skylle / erodere ngt. væk * vold
The rain had <b>washed</b> ( ) <b>away</b> part of the path.	* skylle ngt. bort
In the <b>bottom lands</b> , the flood <b>stirs</b> ( ) <b>up</b> mud,	* ~ landområde i bunden * hvirvle ngt. op
and <b>washes</b> new channels <b>through</b> the <b>wash</b> .	* skylle ( kanal ) gennem ngt. * lavvandet område marsk, vade
<b>Topsoil</b> <b>washes away</b> and <b>settles elsewhere</b> .	* overfladejord * skylle bort * aflejre sig * andetsteds
So the <b>forces of nature</b> <b>sculpt</b> the <b>landscape</b> , as when	* ~ naturkræfterne * ~ forme > * landskab
wind and sea leave <b>ripples</b> on surfaces of water and sand.	* krusninger, ~ riflet overflade

**1330** Suddenly at a **sea`wall**, built to **check** the **tides**,  
they were meet with **unpleasant, offensive, obnoxious**,

**acrid, foul, musty, pungent, rank** and **vile** { **smells / odours**  
`akrid  
from **scummy** water: water covered by a thick **scum** (U).

The area was **polluted** and **littered** with **rubbish /A& trash**.

Only **scummy** people **drop litter** /A& **garbage**.

All kinds of **waste(s)** was / ( were ) **washed ashore**.

All kinds of organic and **inorganic detritus / debris**,  
Inå~`ganik di`traitês `de(i)bri~ E/A dê`bri~  
both from **household waste(s)** of everyday life,

**10** and from **toxic** industrial **waste(s)** had **washed ashore**.

Factories **spread** along the **riverside**.

Many factories are **negligent in** avoiding **spillover**  
so **spillover** has **fouled** and **polluted** the area.

**Polluters** are **scumbags**; being a threat to the environment

**scum** (pl.) like that are the **scum** of the **earth**.

**Waste water gushes from** several **waste pipes**.

**Foul discharge water** and **sewage gush out of**  
the pipes, and **gush** directly **into** the sea.

**20** The **sewers** lead **rainwater** together with **household**  
**waste water** which contains **excreta** (U).

The continuous **waste** and repair of the bodily organs  
lead to **excretion** of human, and animal **waste** ( **matter** ).

Some **waste** is **excreted from** the **kidneys**  
as **liquid** waste matter called **urine**.

The liver excretes **bile** which is passed to the **bowels**.

When a person **has** a **movement** or **bowel movement**,  
they **empty, move** or **open** their **bowels**.

**Indigestible** food elements are passed out of the body  
**30** by a **bowel movement** as a solid waste matter called  
a **bowel movement, excrement** (U), **faeces** (U) or **shit**.

Many of the pipes are full of **leaks**.

**Foul** air and **foul** water **leaking out** of the **leaky**  
and **leaking** pipes **contaminate** the air and the ground.

The **repulsive / repellent stench** from the **polluted**  
and **foul** air, ground and water makes them turn around.

The **disgusting unbearable stink** makes them **turn back**.

The **overpowering reek** of **fumes** and waste water  
makes them **turn / set** their **face homeward / towards home**.

\* dæmning \* standse / tilbageholde > \* tidevand  
\* ubehagelig \* frastødende \* modbydelig  
\* skarp \* fæl \* muggen \* stram \* ækel \* lugt / & hørm  
\* dækket af > \* uvelkommen skum / overflade masse  
\* forurennet > \* tilsvinet ( med ngt. ) \* affald  
\* gemen, tarvelig \* smide > \* =  
\* affald \* blive skyllet > \* i land  
\* spild, -evand \* uorganisk \* nedbrydningsskabte småstumper  
\* husholdnings- \* affald  
\* giftig \* affaldsprodukter \* skylle > \* i land  
\* brede sig \* flodbred  
\* forsømmelig med at - \* overfyldning / -løb  
\* = \* tilsvine / forurene ngt \* =  
\* forurener \* udskud  
\* afskum \* = ⇔ \* jordens  
\* ~ spildevand \* strømme fra ngt. \* ~ spildevands-  
( gennem hul ) rør  
\* ildelugtende \* ~spildevand \* kloakvand \* ... ud af ngt.  
vand  
\* ~ utæt \* lækende ( rør ) \* ... ud i ngt.  
\* kloak \* regnvand \* husholdnings -  
\* spildevand \* ekskret ( urin & fækalier )  
\* slid, nedbrydning  
\* udledning \* affaldsstof ( urin & afføring )  
\* = \* blive udskilt ngt. fra > \* nyre  
\* flydende \* urin, tis  
\* galde \* tarme  
\* have > afføring  
\* =  
\* ufordøjelig  
\* afføring  
\* afføring \* excrementer \* fækalier \* lort  
\* læk, utæthed  
\* forurennet / \* - - \* sive ud \* ~ utæt  
ildelugtende ( luft ) ( vand )  
\* lækende \* forgifte / besmitte ngt.  
\* frastøende \* = \* stank \* forurennet  
modbydelig  
\* & beskidt, ildelugtende  
\* frastødende \* ulidelig \* stank \* vende hjem / -ad  
\* overvældende \* stank af ngt. \* dunste  
giftgasser  
\* ~ vende næsen hjemad

**1331** The **stench** of industrial and political **irresponsibility** hangs in the air.

Every time the local environmental organisations

have **given** the **alarm**, the industrial **pressure group** / **lobby** has / have **put a spoke in** the environmentalists' **wheel**.

**On** the / their **way home**, they agreed that some politicians ought to **beard the lion in** his **den**.

Some **lobbyist's** argumentation **reeks of** hypocrisy.

**Lobbyism** may be a **stinker** (E) requiring **stinkers** (E).

Ann and Al also had talked about a **tanker disaster**:

**10** the **disastrous** stranding of an **oil tanker**

when it had **run aground on** a **shoal**.

Nobody died **in** the **disaster** but there was (a) **great fear of** **leakage** and a **resulting leakage**.

Quite right, the tanker **sprang** / had **sprung a leak**.

Having a **leak**, the tanker started to **leak**.

In the beginning it just **leaked** a small amount of oil.

so the **leakage of** oil was rather limited.

As the waves **washed over** the deck, water **leaked into**

**20** the tanks, and oil **leaked out** of the tanker.

The water **washed** oil **into** the sea.

The oil **washed along** slowly.

A storm soon **washed** the oil **along**,

and **washed it up on** the beach.

**Disaster** (U) **struck**, however, when the tanker **capsized** and { it **spilled crude oil** / crude oil **spilled** } **into** the ocean.

The **wrecked** tanker started **gushing** crude oil.

A **gush of** oil **emerged from** its tanks as water **gushed in**, and thousands of gallons of oil **disastrously gushed out**.

**30** As the **spill(<age)** **spilt**, it ( **was** ) **drifted** / **floated away**.

So the **spill(<age)** was a **environmental disaster** as the **spill(<age)** was soon widespread.

It was a catastrophe worse than many a **natural disaster** as **masses** of sea animals died in the **disastrous spill(<age)**.

Pieces of wreckage which were **washed away**, little by little **washed ashore** in the **disaster area**.

Not until many years the flood had **washed** the beach **clean**.

Some wrecked ships sink to the **profound** depths of the sea.

\* ~ ubehagelig indtryk af ngt.

\* uansvarlighed

\* hænge i luften

\*

\* slå alarm

\* pressionsgruppe / =

~ råbe vagt i gevær

\* ~ stikke en kæp hjulet for ng.

\* på hjemvejen

\* trække ng. i skægget

\* løve

\* hule

~ vove sig ind i løvens hule, ~ trodse ng.

\* ~ stinke / lugte / ose af ( hykleri )

\* lobbyist

\* lobbyisme

\* ~ ubehagelig / svær opgave

\* ubehagelig person

\* tankskibs-

\* kartastofe

\* katastrofal

\* olie-

\* tanker

\* løbe på grund

\* på >

\* lavvandet sandbanke

\* i katastrofen

\* stor frygt for ngt.

\* lækage

\* deraf følgende

\* lækage

det, at der går / er en læk

udslip

\* ~ springe læk

\* læk, lækage

\* lække

utæthed

\* ... ng.

\* den lækkede mængde af ng.

\* skylle over ng.

\* strømme / sive ind i ng.

\* ... ud af ng.

\* skylle ng. ud i ng.

\* skylle afsted

\* skylle ng. afsted

\* ... op på ng.

\* ( en / -n ) katastrofe indtræffer / opstår

\* kæntre

\* spilde > \* rå- \* olie / \* ( = ) løbe over \* ud i ng.

\* vraggjort /

\* udlede ( store mængder ) ( olie )

~ forlist ( skib )

\* strøm \* komme frem fra ng

\* strømme ind

\* katastrofalt

\* ... ud

\* overløbne ( olie )

\* flyde ud

\* drive / flyde af sted

( blive drevet flydende )

\* overløb \* miljømæssig

\* katastrofe

\* overløbsubstans

\* naturkatastrofe

\* masser af ( dyr )

\* katastrofal

\* overløbsubstans

\* ( blive ) skyllet bort

\* skylle i land

\* katastrofeområde

\* ... ng. rent

\* dybtliggende ( dybde )

1332 Getting home, they felt a slight **chill** from the windows.

Al lit a small fire to **take** the **chill off** the room.

He used a **spill** to light the fire.

**Rest** (U) is essential after hard work so they just

**had** a quick **wash** and a **short rest** before dinner.

In the evening Al **prepared** a simple meal.

There is little **wastage** from a **lean cut of** meat.

As there was little left, they might as well **finish** the steak.

So they **finished** ( ) **off / up** the steak **at** one **meal**.

10 They **washed down** the steak **with** red wine.

After a few **stiff drinks**, Ann filled her glass so full  
that the drink **spilled** / E& **spilt over**.

As the drink **spilled over onto** the table,

Al just **wiped up** the **spills** on the table with a cloth.

As not much was left, they might as well **finish** the booze.

So they **finish** ( ) **off / up** the booze.

Ann **finished** her drink **in** one **gulp**.

Having **finished** ( ) **off / up** her drink **at** a large **gulp**,

Ann **gushed over** Al's **courtesy** in a **gush of** emotion.

20 ' Do I sound **fuddled** / **tiddly** ? ' Ann had asked.

' Not at all Al, ' All had **gushed**.

While the **candles** had **wasted** in burning,

Ann and Al's **mutual affection** grew.

They **embraced** and kissed before they **went to rest**.  
im'breisd

( If people **go to rest**, they may **go to** their **rest**,

that is to say **go to eternal rest**. )

Having **spent** a **restful** night **sleeping it off**,

and **having had a good night's rest**,

Ann and Al didn't **roll out of bed** until late.

30 In the morning they **embraced** / **hugged** each other again.

Having put their arms around each other and **hugged**,

Ann and Al had amused each other by mentioning how they

had **got** increasingly **merry** / o-f **elevated on** the alcohol,

and how they had tended to **fall into gushing praise**

**in line with** an increasing number of drinks.

\* kølighed

\* ~ fjerne køligheden fra ngt.

\* fidibus ( af pind / snoet papir )

\* hvile

\* en ( hurtig ) gang vask

\* et kort hvil

\* tilberede ngt.

\* spild \* mager \* udskæring af ( kød )

\* gøre en ende / kål på  
spise ngt. helt op

\* spise ngt. op \* i ( et ) måltid

\* skylle ngt. ned med ngt.

\* stærk

\* drink

\* løbe over

\* løbe over ned på ngt.

\* tørre ngt. op

\* det spildte

\* ~ gøre en ende / kål på ngt.  
drikke ngt. helt op

\* =

\* ~ gøre en ende på / tømme ngt.  
drikke ngt. helt op

\* i ( en ) slurk

\* =

\* falde i henrykkelse over ngt. \* belevenhed \* overvældende  
udbrud af ngt.

\* ~ snaldret, småberuset

\* udbryde ( utroværdigt overstrømmende )

\* stearinlys

\* svinde

\* gensidig

\* kærlighed

\* omfavne hinanden

\* gå til hvile / ro

\* & ~ sove ind

\* ~ sove ind

\* ~ sove ind

\* tilbringe > \* rolig ( nat )

\* ~ sove rusen ud

\* få en god nats >

\* hvile

\* ~ vælte ud af sengen

\* omfavne / kramme ng.

~ trykke ng. i sin favn

\* kramme

\*

\* blive >

\* munter / opstemt af ( alkohol )

\* henfalde til > \* ( overdreven ) overstrømmende \* ros

\* i takt med ngt.





**1334** Having **dried** her hair and body **with a bath towel**,

Ann **plastered** her body **with a fragrant moisturizer**.

Looking into the mirror, Al realized he looked **unshaven**

so as he needed a **shave**, he had a **shave** after his **bath**.

Mixing **shaving soap** or **shaving cream** with hot water,  
he made thick **lather** with his **shaving brush**.

Standing on a **bath mat** in front of a mirror,  
he **lathered** his **unshaven** face until the lather  
had **softened** and **conditioned** his **beard** for **shaving**.

**10** Wearing a ( **bath**>) **robe**, he **shaved** using a **razor**,

In the US, the term ( **bath**>) **robe** is used for  
a **dressing gown** (E) which is used over night clothes etc.

He uses a **safety razor**, as using a 'cut-throat' **razor**  
seems too him a **risky business**.

Instead of buying new **razor blades**, people often buy  
**disposable razors**.

He sometimes uses a **shaver**, an **electric razor**.

**Clean-shaven**, he **rinses** his face **with** clean water  
from the **cold tap**.

**20** He **rinses** the **face flannel** ( **facecloth** E/A **washcloth** )  
in the **sink** / ( **wash**>) **basin** E/A **washbowl**.

Having **put** (a) fragrant **aftershave** ( **lotion** ) **on** his face,  
his skin is as soft and **smooth as a baby's bottom**.

Having **sprouted** a **beard**, Al was once a **bearded** man.

**Growing** a beard, he only **had a beard** for a short while  
as a girl soon persuaded him to **shave** ( ) **off** his **beard**.

So he became **clean-shaven**.

A friend of his **shaves** his head every day to present  
a **clean-shaven** head; his hair had **thinned unbecomingly**

**30** so now he has a **bearded face** and a **shaved** head.

Al never wanted to have a **shaven** head.

Having **had** E/A **taken** { a **pee** / **leak** and **flushed** the **toilet**,  
he didn't forget to **put down** the **toilet seat**.

He always cleans the **toilet bowl** after usage if needed.

Hair may **sprout from** most parts of the body.

**Shaving unwanted** hair **off** every part of their body,  
some people may **shave** their legs, their **armpits** etc.

Some people **shave** ( ) **off** their **pubic hair**.

\* tørre ngt. med > \* bade- \* håndklæde  
\* smøre ( kroppen ) med > \* velduftende \* fugtigheds-  
creme  
\* ubarberet  
\* barbering \* =  
\* barbersæbe \* -creme / -krem  
\* sæbeskum \* barberkost  
\* bademåtte  
\* sæbe ngt. ind \* ubarberet  
\* blødgøre ngt. > \* gøre ngt. \* skæg \* til \* barbering  
egnet >  
\* ( bade-) kåbe \* barbere sig \* barberinstrument  
\* =  
\* ~ slåbrok  
\* barbermaskine \* rage-, barberkniv  
\* risikabelt \* foretagende  
\* barberblad  
\* kasserbar-, ~ engangs- \* barbermaskine  
\* ( el-) barbermaskine \* elektrisk \* barberinstrument  
~ barbermaskine  
\* glatbarberet \* skylle ngt. med ngt.  
\* koldt vandshanen  
\* skylle ngt. \* vaskeklud \* = \* =  
\* håndvask  
\* ~ komme > \* - = - \* ~ i ansigtet  
\* glat \* som en babys \* numse  
~ babynumse  
\* ~ lade skægget gro frem \* skægget  
\* ~ lade skægget vokse \* have skæg  
have skæg  
\* barbere > \* skægget af  
\* glatbarberet  
\* barbere ngt.  
\* glatbarberet \* ~ blive tyndt \* uklædeligt  
\* skægget \* barberet ( hoved )  
\* barberet ( adj.)  
\* ~ tisse skylle > \* toilettet  
~ skylle ud  
\* slå > ned \* toilet- \* sæde, ~ bræt  
& lokumsbræt  
\* WC- / toilet-kumme  
\* gro / vokse frem fra ngt.  
\* barbere > \* uønsket ( hår ) \* af ngt.  
\* barbere ngt. \* armhule  
\* ... ngt. af \* pubes- / køns- \* hår  
behåring

**1335** When Al had invited Ann for a **sail**, she absolutely

**gushed** enthusiasm, and gave Al a big **hug**.

Al felt happy **holding** Ann in a tender **embrace**.  
im`breis

When he **took** his girlfriend **for a sail**,

there was a **chill** in the air as **mist rolled in** from the sea.

In order not to **catch a chill** in the **chill / chilly** morning  
they were wearing sweaters.

A slight **chill / chilly** wind was **stirring** in the trees.

The slight breeze **stirred** the leaves.

**10** They **strode along**, their **hands buried** in their **pockets**.

Carrying a bag, Al could only **bury one hand**

**in one** of his **pocket**.

The boat was **moored to** a somewhat higher **quay**.

Having **agilely jumped down into** the boat,  
`ad\$aili

Al **offered** Ann his **hand**, shouting, ' Quick, **jump**.'

Ann **nimbly jumped down** from the **wharf**.

She was extremely **nimble on her feet**.

A few **seagulls** were **swimming** in the harbour,  
and Ann noticed a **shoal** or **school** of fish **swimming** past.

**20** Children often **jump into** the water from the **breakwater**.

While their sailing boat was leaving the harbour,  
a speedboat took off **skimming** the **waves**.

A **dinghy** was **rocked** by the **wash** of the speedboat  
and the **wash from its propeller**.

A **rubber dinghy** /A& raft is used for rescuing people.

Al hoisted the sails and the sails had **swelled** ( out ).

As the wind had **swelled** ( out ) the sails,

Al had let the boat **hug** the **shore**.

At a time, the had decided to **anchor** to have lunch.

**30** So in order to **cast anchor** Al had **reefed** the **sail**,  
and **dropped** the **anchor**.

**Being / lying at anchor**, the had had a light lunch.

A ship had **hove / heaved into sight / view** on the horizon.

**Washed** by waves, most coasts **wash** more or less.

As waves **roll onto** the beaches and the cliffs, some parts  
of the shore **wash away** while other parts grow with **deposits**.

\* sejltur

\* overstrømmende udtrykke ngt.

\* omfavnelse  
kram

\* holde ng. >

\* i en (øm ) omfavnelse

\* tage ng. ud på en sejltur

\* kølighed

\* dis

\* rulle ind

\* få en forkølelse, blive forkølet

\* kølig ( morgen )

\*

\* kølig ( vind )

\* bevæge sig

\* ~ sætte ngt. i bevægelse  
få ngt. til at bevæge sig

\* gå med lange skridt

\* ~ med hænderne  
begravet i lommen  
\* ( sin ) ene hånd

\* begrave >

\* i >

\* ( sin ) ene lomme

\* fortøjet til ngt.

\* kaj

\* adræt

\* hoppe ned i ngt.

\* tilbyde / række ng. sin hånd

\* springe

\* adræt

\* hoppe ned fra

\* kaj

\* adræt

\* på fødderne

\* måge

\* svømme

\* stime

\* = ( forbi)

\* hoppe / springe >

\* i vandet

\* mole

\*

\* stryge hen over >

\* bølge

\* jolle

\* ( blive ) vippet

\* søen, dønningen

\* skulpen fra ngt.

\* skrue

\* gumribåd

\* ( sejl ) svulme

\* få ( sejl ) til at svulme

\* ( båd ) holde sig tæt til kysten

\* ankre op

\* kaste anker

\* rebe >

\* sejl

\* - = -

\* ligge >

\* for anker

\* ~ komme til syne, dukke op

\* overskyllet / eroderet af ngt.

\* ~ erodere

\* ( bølge ) rulle ind på ngt.

\* skylles / eroderes væk

\* aflejringer

**1336** Suddenly, however, the **wind was rising**.  
 So they decided to **heave up / weigh anchor**.  
 So **heaving at / on** the anchor **rope** as Ann shouted,  
 ‘ **heave-ho** ’, Al had **heaved up** the **anchor**.  
 As the **wind** was **getting up**, the sea really started  
 to **heave** ( up and down ) beneath the boat.  
**Swelling rollers** made the boat **heaved** beneath them.  
 The **swelling** and **rolling waves** started to **break**  
 so the boat **heaved** and **rolled** in the **swelling** sea.  
**10** As the **breaking waves frothed** and **foamed**,  
 the **swelling breakers** got **foam / froth crests**.  
**Raging breakers** and strong **winds**  
**whipped** the water to **foam / froth**.  
**Blowing in gusts**, the **wind** had **gusted**.  
**Winds** had **gusted** probably **up to gale force**.  
**Gusts** ( of **wind** ) probably up to gale force,  
 and breaking waves had **frothed** the sea,  
 and left **scattered** areas covered with **froth** and **foam**.  
 As the breakers **splashed**, **frothed** and **foamed**,  
**20** the **frothing** and **foaming** waves left behind them  
**frothy** and **foamy troughs** of the **waves**.  
 Ann seemed to enjoy the **fury of the elements**:  
 the **raging** storm and the **raging** waves.  
 The **wash** of the **breakers** had **drenched** Al and Ann,  
 and much of their conversation was **drowned** ( **out** )  
 by the **wash** of the **raging breakers**.  
 Although the deep **rolls** of the breaking waves  
**drown** ( **out** ) much of their voices, there was, however,  
 suddenly a **pregnant** pause.  
**30** After a **conspicuous** and **ominous silence**,  
 Al realized that something had **reduced** Ann to **silence**.  
 Was she afraid a huge wave might **wash** them **overboard** ?  
 There had been a **pregnant silence**.  
 She was **silent**: **silent as the grave**.  
 Her **chest heaved**.  
 Her **shoulders heaved with abdominal discomfort**  
 as she had **rolled** herself **up in** a blanket.

\* vinden > \* rejse sig  
 ~ det blæser op  
 \* ~ lette > \* anker  
 \* hive i > \* reb  
 \* hiv-oh-høj \* hive > op \* anker  
 \* vinden > \* rejse sig  
 \* ( hav ) hæve sig og synke  
 \* svulmende \* tung, rullende bølge \* ( båd ) - = -  
 \* = \* rullende \* bølge \* brydes  
 \* - = - \* rulle, vippe \* svulmende ( hav )  
 \* brydende \* bølge \* skumme \* =  
 \* svulmende \* brådsø \* skum- \* top / kam  
 \* rasende \* = \* vindstød  
 \* piske ngt. > \* til skum  
 \* blæse \* ~ med vindstød \* vinden \* ~ tage til >  
 med vindstød  
 \* vinde \* blæse stødvis \* op til stormstyrke  
 \* ( vind-) stød  
 \* få ( havet ) til at skumme  
 dække ( havet ) med skum  
 \* skum  
 \* plaske \* skumme \* =  
 \* skummede \* ... ( bølge )  
 \* skumdækket \* = \* fordybning \* bølge  
 ~ bølgedal  
 \* elementernes rasen  
 \* rasende  
 \* sprøjt \* brådsø \* gennembløde ng.  
 \* ( blive ) druknet / overdøvet  
 \* brusen \* skummende  
 \* rullende lyd  
 \* drukne / overdøve ng.  
 \* ildevarslende  
 \* tydelig \* ildevarslende \* tavshed  
 påfaldende  
 \* bringe / tvinge ng. til tavshed  
 \* skylle ng. overbord  
 \* ~ sigende \* tavshed  
 \* tavs \* ... som graven  
 \* brystkasse \* hæve og sænke sig tungt  
 ~ ng. ånder tungt  
 \* skuldre \* - = - \* mave- \* ubehag  
 \* ~ svøbe sig ind i ( tæppe )

**1337** As she had sat **heaving** and **puffing with** discomfort,  
the **roll** and **pitch of** the boat had made her **heave**:  
it made **waves** of **nausea wash through** her.

**Waves** of **nausea** had **washed over** her.

Feeling dizzy and **nauseated** / **nauseous** and **seasick**,  
she had felt she was going to **heave** ( her lunch ).

Al **recognized** a look of **mute** appeal.

He realized what had **put** her **to silence**  
as a liquid **gushed out of** her mouth.

**10** A **gush** of liquid **poured repeatedly out** of her mouth.

Her **eyes** were **swimming with** tears.

The surroundings were **swimming before** her **eyes**  
as she **rested** her **chin in** her hand.

The **roll** of the boat **inclined** the **cabin** walls.

**The rest of the way back**, Ann sat **mute** in a corner  
of the cabin, **keeping close to** the **inclined** wall.

As if waiting for the waves to **capsize** the boat,  
she sat in the corner **hugging** the **inclining** wall

Water had **spread** regularly **across** the **inclined floor**.

**20** Hugging the **sloping** wall, her **chin resting in** her hand,  
she had sat **in complete silence**.

**Keeping silent**, she avoided looking at the water  
**spreading up** and **down** the **inclining** / **sloping floor**.

Once in a while she **heaved** a **groan** / **moan** of discomfort.

**Gulping for air**, she seemed to say a **silent prayer**.

**Gulping** ( **in** ) the fresh **air**, she seemed to **pray silently**.

When Al had cast her a worried glance,  
she had **gulped back** her **tears** and **forced** a faint **smile**.

He had asked if she could **hold on** a **short way more**,

**30** and she had **gulped** nervously before trying to answer.

**Giving** a **gulp**, she had **gulped**, ' Sure '.

They **finished** the **sail in total** and **gloomy silence**.

She **sat silently** `by while he `put into port / put `in,  
and **remained silent** while he **unrigged** the **sail** and **cordage**.

She **stayed silent** until she was **on firm ground**.

Was the sea too rough or was she a **bad sailor** ?

\* trække vejret tungt > \* puste af ( ubehag )  
\* rulling \* op og nedgang \* føle ubehag i maven  
( af båd ) ~ få kvalme  
\* bølge af > \* kvalme \* vælde gennem ng.  
\* - = - \* overvælde ng.  
\* kvalmeramt \* = \* søsyg  
\* kaste ( ngt. ) op  
\* genkende ngt. \* stum  
\* bring ng. til tavshed tavs  
\* strømme ud af ngt.  
\* strøm \* vælde > \* gentagne gange \* ud af ngt.  
\* øjne > \* ~ være vædet af > \* tårer  
\* svømme foran ngs. øjne  
\* hvile / støtte \* hage  
\* rulning \* få ngt. til at hælde / skråne \* kahyt  
\* resten af \* vejen tilbage \* stum  
~ på resten af tilbagevejen tavs  
\* klemme sig ind til ngt. \* hældende  
skrå  
\* kæntre ( båd )  
\* klemme sig ind til ngt. \* hældende  
skrå  
\* sprede sig / -s \* hen- / udover \* skrå \* gulv  
løbe  
\* hældende \* hage \* hvile / støttet i ( hånd )  
skrå  
\* i fuldstændig tavshed \* ~ med tårevædede øjne  
\* (for-) holde sig tavs  
tie stille  
\* sprede sig \* op og ned ( ad ) / \* hældende \* gulv  
frem og tilbage ( over ) >  
\* udstøde > \* stønnen, jammer af ( ubehag )  
\* ~ gispe after > \* luft \* stille \* bøn  
\* gispende indånde > \* luft \* bede \* ~ i stilhed  
\*  
\* tilbageholde > \* tårer \* fremtvinge \* smil  
\* holde ud \* ~ kort stykke vej \* mere, ~ endnu  
\* gispe  
\* give > \* gisp \* ~ sige med et gisp  
\* afslutte > \* sejltur \* i total & dystert > \* tavshed  
\* sidde \* tavs \* ved siden af \* ~ søge havn  
~ forholde sig passivt  
\* forholde sig \* rigge > af \* sejl \* tovværk  
/ forblive tavs  
\* = \* ( være ) på fast grund  
\* ~ person, der let bliver søsyg

1338 Ann's **head swam**, and she **swayed dizzily**

as Al had helped her back **on solid ground**.

**Guts of wind stirred** ( ) **up** dust and leaves from the ground.

Caught in a **squally shower** as they had set out  
to fight their way home, they had to **bend / bow** their **back**,  
and lean forward against the strong wind.

Some **slender birches bent / bowed** in the strong winds  
as **gusts** and **squalls bent / bowed** the young birch trees.

Walking with a **rolling gait**, Ann and Al had tried to

**10 recover / recuperate** in either their way.

Although their first **sail** had developed into a total **disaster**,  
after a while of **oppressive silence**, Ann had **rested** her head  
**on** Al's shoulder and said **gushingly**, 'I love sailing.'

Even though she looked **pale** after her seasickness,  
he **found** her no less attractive / an attractive woman.

Though she sometimes seemed a bit of a **gusher**,  
he **found** her **to have** a **nimble mind**.

Still **oppressed** by the **sail** on the **menacing** sea,  
they got back **in profound, deep, and dead silence**.

**20** They **had a good rest** in the afternoon.

**United** in **sympathy** by their **joint** experiences,  
they **finished up** (E) totally in love.

**The rest is`history**.

From then on Ann's life is **inextricably bound up with** Al's.

Ann talks about Al **morning, noon and night**.

Ann **plasters** her bedroom wall **with** photos of Al.

As she keeps **plastering** photos of him **over** a wall,  
she has soon photos of him **plastered** all **over** the wall.

\* ~ det svimler i ens hoved      \* slingre      \* svimmelt

\* på fast grund

\* vindstød

\* hvirvle ngt. op

\* ~ byge med pludselige, kraftige vindstød

\* bøje >

\* ryggen

\*

\* slank

\* birketræ

\* blive bøjet

\* vindstød

\* =

\* bøje ngt.

\* på fast grund

\* slingrende

\* gangart  
måde at gå på

\* komme sig

\* knugende

\* stilhed

\* katastrofe

\* knugende      \* stilhed \* anbringe / hvile ( hovedet ) >

\* mod / på ngt.

\* ( utroværdigt ) overstrømmende

\* bleg

\* ~ anse ng. ( for ) adj. / subst.

\* ~ overdreven sentimental person

\* anse ng. for at -

\* have et >

\* kvikt

\* sind

& være et kvikt hoved

\* knuget af ngt.

\* sejltur

\* faretruende

\* dyb

\* =

\* =

\* stilhed

\* få sig et godt hvil

\* forenet \* ( i ) sympati /

\* fælles \* oplevelse

~ gensidig velvillig følelse

\* ende med at være ngt.

\* resten er historie / ~ kendt

\* uløseligt

\* forbundet med ngt.

\* morgen, middag og aften

\* plastre ngt. til med ngt.

\* plastre ngt. ud over ngt.

\* =

# PROPOSAL

**1339** For many years Al has been **wedded to** his **work**.

Being **married to** his **job** for quite a while,

he has had no **marriage plans** so far.

But soon Al, in a jokingly tone, **gives way to** his **feelings**

when he admits, ' I ' ve been **courting** / **wooing** you (o-f)

from the first time I saw you – and as we've been **courting**

long enough, I think it's time I **propose**. '

When he so **proposes to** Ann, she **accepts** his **proposal**  
in a **gush of tears**.

**10** She **wasted** no time ( **in** ) accepting his proposal.

Having **proposed** ( **marriage** ) **to** Ann, and having her yes,  
Al feels **blissfully happy** about **getting married**.

Al is a **suitable** candidate for her **matrimonial projects**.

Her idea of **bliss** is a **matrimonial home**,

and a **spouse in domestic bliss**.

Having asked Ann **for her hand** ( **in marriage** ) (o-f),

Al **asks** Ann's parents **for** their daughter's **hand** ( **in marriage** ).

The old-fashioned parents consider their daughter

to have reached **marriageable** (o-f) age.

**20** As the parents consider her to be a **marriageable** girl,

they **are agreed on giving** their daughter **in marriage to** Al.

Al is **profoundly** grateful.

The parents feel happy to **marry** their daughter.

They feel **relieved to marry** her **to a native** person:

a **native-born** person, belonging to the **indigenous** population.

Wanting to **marry** ( ) **off** a daughter or son, some parents

want to **marry** ( ) **off** their children only **to** people of rank.

Ann's parents don't approve of **marriages of convenience**,

and don't believe in **mixed marriages**.

**30** Their coming **son in law** is a **manager** by **occupation**.

His **civilian occupation** ( his **occupation** in **civil life** )

is an **celebrated advertising manager**.

It's a **gainful occupation**, and he's quite a **celeb**.

Al **occupies** his own **office on the top floor**.

Having **embraced** marketing, he has **embraced a trade**

and a **profession** not only **suited to** his **abilities**, but also

**suited to** his **inclination** and **suited for** his **ambitions**.

\* frieri

\* gift med >

\* siit arbejde

\* - = -

\* ægteskabs- / giftemåls-

\* plan

\* ~ lade sine følelser få frit løb

\* gøre kur til ng. , gå på frierfødde overfor ng.

\* komme sammen ( før ægteskabeligt )

\* fri, foreslå ægteskab

\* fri til ng.

\* ~ sige ja til ngs. frieri

\* udbrud / strøm af >

\* tårer

\* spilde ngt. med at -

\* foreslå ægteskab til ng. , ~ fri til ng

\* ovenud lykkelig

\* blive gift

\* passende / egnet ( kandidat )

\* giftermålsplan

\* lyksalighed

\* ægteskabeligt

\* hjem

\* ægtefælle

\* hjemlig

\* =

\* anholde ng. om ngs. hånd

\* - = -

\*

\* giftefærdig ( alder )

\* ... ( person )

\* være enige om at -

\* give ng. til ægte til ng.

\* dybt

\* bortgifte ng.

\* lettet over

\* ... til ng.

\* indfødt

\* =

\* =

\* bortgifte ng.

\* bortgifte ng. til ng.

\* fornuftsægteskab

\* blandet ægteskab

\* svigersøn

\* direktør

\* ( af ) beskæftigelse

\* civil / borgerlig

\* =

\* =

\* civile \* liv

\* velanset

\* ~ reklame

\* direktør

\* indbringende

\* & levevej

\* celebrity

\* ~ have >

\* kontor

\* på øverste etage

\* gå ind i >

\* erhverv

( håndværk, handel, service )

\* profession

\* passe til > \* evner

( uddannelseskrævende erhverv )

\* ... til >

\* ~ lyst

\* egnet til >

\* ~ drømmemål





## BEFORE THE WEDDING

**1341** Al and Ann start to organize the **wedding celebrations**. \* ~ bryllupsfest

Some of their friends have long **heard wedding bells**,  
and as some one must have **spilled the beans**  
before the couple's **marriage plans** are officially announced,  
their wedding is soon a **leaked secret**.

As the news is **leaked to** the **yellow press**,  
details of the plan soon **leak out**.

' Advertising manager to **wed** local beauty, ' the **headline**  
of a **tabloid placard** / a tabloid **contents bill** announces.

The couple plan to **wed** in June, ' the **subheading** reads.

**10** **Marrying** Al, Ann **marries into** the **new rich**.

Their marriage **makes** the **front page** in the tabloid.

As their marriage **makes front-page news**,  
their picture is **plastered** all **over** the front page of the tabloid.

**Of course** their **wedding** has to **take place** in a **church**.

**Obviously** their **marriage** is going to be a **church wedding**.

They both look forward to their **wedding day**.

They feel they are **wedded by** common interests.

Al has **embraced** the Anglican Church.

**20** They **are getting married** in the local church.

The church has a **lofty** tower, and a **lofty nave**.

They are **getting married** in two months.

They are **marrying** on a Saturday.

The **wedding party** takes place at a nearby inn,

a **suitable place for** a **wedding reception**,

and a **suitable place to** have a **wedding breakfast**.

August is a **suitable time** of the year **for** their wedding  
as it's a **suitable time** of the year **to** have a garden party.

The local priest is going to **officiate ( at )** the **wedding**  
**30** so the local priest is going to **marry** the happy couple.

As they shall be **married by** the local priest,  
he is going to **celebrate** the **wedding**,  
and **celebrate** the **marriage service**.

Ann's parants know the **officiating** priest very well  
as he has held / conducted **church services** for years.

As the **celebrant** at the **celebration of** the **Eucharist**,  
the priest **officiates at / celebrates** the **Communion service**.

\* høre > \* ~ bryllupsklokkerne ( ringe )  
\* ~ plabre ud med / røbe det hele  
\* giftermåls- \* plan  
\* lækket \* hemmelighed  
\* lække ngt. til ngt. \* ~ sladderpressen  
\* sive ud  
\* gifte sig med ngt. \* overskrift  
\* tabloidavis \* plakat, opslag \* plakat, opslag  
~ spiseseddel ~ spiseseddel  
\* gifte sig ( ej udv. tid ) \* underrubrik  
\* gifte sig med ngt. \* ... ind i > \* ( de ) nyrige  
\* udgøre > \* forside- \* nyhed  
\* plastret ud over ngt.  
\* selvfølgelig \* bryllup \* finde sted / \* ( i ) kirke  
selvsagt foregå  
\* = \* bryllup ( ej så alm. ) \* kirke- \* bryllup  
\* bryllupsdag  
\* sammenknyttet af ngt.  
\* tilslutte sig / gå over til ngt.  
\* blive gift  
\* højt \* højloftet \* skib  
\* =  
\* gifte sig  
\* bryllups- \* sammenkomst  
\* passende ( sted ) for > \* ...- \* reception  
\* passende ( sted ) til at - \* ...- \* måltid, middag  
\* ... ( tidspunkt ) til ngt.  
\* ... ( tidspunkt ) til at -  
\* forestå ( ved ) > \* bryllup  
\* vie ngt.  
\* =  
\* forrette > \* vielse  
\* = \* vielsesretual  
\* forrettende  
\* lede / forrette ngt. \* kirke ( -lig ) \* handling  
~ gudstjeneste  
\* celebrant \* forrettelse af > \* nadver  
\* forrette > \* nadver

\* spinkel                      \* brude-                      \* sko



1344 Al asks his brother to be his **best man**.

A best man attends to the **bridegroom**

before and under the **wedding ceremony**.

Al's brother never **married**.

Living a **bachelor's life**, he says, ' I'm **unmarried**,  
I guess I'm not the **marrying kind**.

Before the wedding, Al has a **stag night / party E//A**  
a **bachelor party** with his male friends.

Ann has a **hen night / party E//A** a **bridal shower**  
**10** with her female friends.

The bride-to-be wears a **becoming crepe / crêpe** dress  
with **daisies spilt** casually **over** the white **ground** of the dress.

**Gaily coloured pattern** doesn't **suit** everybody.

A lot of guests are invited to the **wedding /& marriage**,  
and a lot of **onlookers** will come to the **wedding**.

The church is beautifully **dressed with** flowers.

The wedding **fills** the **nave to the brim / to overflowing**.

More than a hundred are present **at** Ann and Al's **wedding**,  
so, having **filled ( up )** the nave, the guests **spill over into**  
**20** the **adjacent aisles**: aisles **adjacent to** the nave.

**Dressing** well and **fashionably**, the guests have  
**dressed** themselves and their children **in** their best clothes.

Some children **dress** quickly when their parents tell them  
to **get up and get dressed**.

**Dressing smartly, dressed in dressy** clothes,  
the **dressy** guests are **smartly dressed**.

So the grown-up guests wear formal **dress**: having put on  
their **Sunday best**, they all wear **evening dress (U)**.

The women are wearing **evening** or **cocktail dresses**,  
**30** and have put on make-up sometimes to cover a **blemish**.

Having **dress sense**, a **snappy dresser** is **dressed to `kill**.

She is said to **be born with a silver spoon in her mouth**,  
and to have **had** it all **handed to** her **on a silver platter**.

A little boy wears a **sailor suit**.

A transvestite / tranny is **dressed as** a woman.  
trans`vestait

\* ~ forlover

\* brudgom

\* bryllupsceremoni

\* gifte sig

\* ungkarle-

\* liv

\* ugift

\* ~ giftelysten

\* slags

& typen, der gifter sig

\* kronhjortehan

\* nat / fest

~ polterabend

\* =

\* høne, hunfugl

\* nat / fest

\* ~ brudefest før brulluppet

~ poltreabend

\* klædelig

\* crepe / krep ( kjole )

\* margerit

\* spredt ud over ng.

\* bund

\* spraglet

\* farvet

\* mønster

\* klæde ng.

\* bryllup

\* tilskuer

\* =

\* dekoreret / pyntet med ng.

\* fylde >

\* midterskibet

\* ( til randen / overflod )  
~ til bristepunktet

\* ved ngs. bryllup

\* fyldt ng.

\* brede sig ind i >

\* tilstødende

\* sideskibe

\* støde op ng.

\* klæde sig ( pænt )

\* moderigtigt

\* klæde sig / klæde ng. på >

\* i ng.

\* klæde sig på

\* stå op og tage tøj på

\* klædt i >

\* elegant, formelt

\* påklædningsbevidst

\* smart

\* påklædt, klædt på

\* elegant, formelt

\* tøj, påklædning

\* søndagstøj

\* selskabstøj

\* aften- / selskabskjole

\* skavank, skønhedsfejl

\* ~ sans for

\* ~ smart klædt

\* klædt opsigts-

påklædning

person

vækkende elegant på

\* født med en sølvske i munden

\* få ng. serveret på >

\* et sølvfad

\* ~ matrostøj ( til drenge )

\* klædt på som ng.

**1345** Some of the male guests wear a **two-piece suit** :

a **lounge suit** E/A **business suit** which has matching jacket,  
and trousers or pants made of the same **fabric**.

Some men wear grey **morning dress** (U) including  
striped trousers /E/A pants, a **morning coat** E/A a **cut away**,  
and a ( **silk** ) **top hat**.

An officer is in / **wears full dress** ( **uniform** ),  
so like most of the guests, he is **dressed (up)** to the `nines.

Most guests would never **wear dress unsuitable** for them,  
**10** or **unsuitable** for the **occasion**.

**Dressing the part**, the guests **look the part**.

The onlookers wear more **casual clothes**.

**Dressing casually** and **smartly**, some onlookers  
are **casually** and **smartly dressed in** jeans and a T-shirt  
as they find there is no need to **dress up**.

They **come as they are** although they are expected  
by many guests to **dress for** a wedding.

Some people **dress badly**.

**Badly dressed**, they have no **dress sense**.

**20** ' These people ought to get a **dressing-down**;  
somebody ought to **dress ( ) down** such fools,' a guest **snaps**.

Some are **mutton dressed as lamb**.

You never **dress** entirely in black **for** a wedding.

The **spillover of** guests **fills** the adjacent aisles **to capacity**.  
The church is **crowded / filled to bursting ( point )**.  
Wearing a **bridal veil**, and carrying her **wedding bouquet**,  
the bride is **walked / lead up the aisle** by her father.

In a **froth of snow-white laces**, the bride **looks a picture**

In her **frothy** white wedding **dress**, she **is a picture**.

**30** Her beautifully **finished** bridal **gown looks / is a picture**.  
In a froth of **lace** (U) **as white as snow**, she is  
as **pretty as a picture** (o-f).

There is a **breathless silence** under the **lofty vault**  
of beautiful **arches**.

- \* ~ jakkesæt
- \* forretningdjakkessæt
- \* struktur vævning, stof \* fritids-  
\* ~ jaket
- \* ~ jaketjakke
- \*
- \* vere i / bære > \* fuld \* beklædning ( \* uniform )  
( ~ galla- )
- \* klædt på til > \* ( de ) ni ( muser )  
~ stadset ud
- \* bære / gå med > \* tøj \* upassende for ng.
- \* ... > \* ~ til lejligheden
- \* ~ klæde sig til rollen \* se ud som man skal til <  
/ lejligheden
- \* tilfældig, skødesløs \* tøj \* klæde sig  
dagligdags, uformel påklædning
- \* tilfældigt etc. \* klædt i ng.
- \* klæde sig finere ( på )
- \* komme som man er
- \* klæde sig på til ( bryllup )
- \* klæde sig > \* elendig
- \* = \* påklædt \* ~ sans for korrekt påklædning
- \* ~ balle, overhaling
- \* kritisere, irettesætte \* vrisse  
skælde ng. ud
- \* fårekød tilberedt som lammekød  
~ alt for ungdommeligt klædt
- \* klæde sig i ng. til ng.
- \* overskydende ( gæster ) \* fylde ng. \* ~ helt op
- \* fyldt til > \* bristepunktet
- \* brudeslør \* brudebuket
- \* ~ føre ng. op ad kirkegulvet
- \* i et brus ( af ) > \* sne- \* knipling \* ~ se billedskøn ud  
hvid blonde
- \* ~ let og elegant \* kjole \* være billedskøn
- \* færdiggjort \* kjole
- \* kniblingsværk \* hvid som sne
- \* ~ billedskøn
- \* åndeløs \* stilhed \* ~ højt hævet \* hvælving  
hvælvet loft
- \* hvælving  
bue

<b>1346</b> At the <b>marriage service</b> , the <b>officiating</b> priest	* bryllupsritual	* forrettende, udøvende
stands <b>with</b> his <b>back to</b> the alter waiting to <b>marry</b> Ann and Al.	* med ryggen ( vendt ) mod ngt.	* gifte ng.
<b>Joining</b> them ( <b>together</b> ) in <b>marriage / holy matrimony</b> ,	* forene ng. i ægteskab, vie ng.	
he <b>unites</b> them in the <b>bonds</b> of <b>holy matrimony</b> .	* - = -	
The bridegroom brings the <b>wedding bands</b> .	* vielses-	* ring
First the priest asks the bride, ' <b>Do you take this man to be</b>	* vil du tage denne mand til at være >	
<b>your husband</b> ? ' and when she has answered yes, he asks,	* din ægtemand	
' <b>Will you love and honour him till death do you part</b> ? '	* vil du elske og ære ham til døden jer skiller	
First the bridegroom then the bride puts a <b>wedding ring</b>	* vielsesring	
<b>10</b> on the ring finger of the other one.	*	
The priest asks the bridegroom the same questions,	*	
' Do you take this woman to be your wife	*	
and will you love and honour her till death do you part ? '	*	
Exchanging <b>marriage / wedding vows</b> , the groom	* bryllups-	* løfte
and bride <b>reply</b> to the questions <b>with</b> a <b>devoted</b> yes.	* besvare ngt. med >	* hengivent * ja
The priest then asks the audience, ' If anyone has	*	
any <b>objection to</b> this marriage let them stand forward.	* indvending overfor ngt.	
As nobody stands forward, the priest now <b>pronounces</b> Ann	* erklære ng. ( for ) >	
and Al ( <b>to be</b> ) <b>lawfully wedded</b> husband and wife, stating	* ( at være ) > * lovformligt * ægteviet ( mand og kone )	
<b>20</b> ( that ) <b>what God hath joined let no man put asunder</b> .	* hvad gud har forenet, skal intet menneske skille	
The <b>newly married / newlywed couple</b> may now kiss.	* ~ nygift par, brudepar	
So the <b>newlyweds</b> kiss each other.	* =	
Ann is now <b>married to</b> Al and vice versa.	* gift med ng.	
At this moment, the <b>emotions</b> of many guests <b>spill over</b> .	* følelser	* strømme over
Some guests are <b>brimming</b> ( <b>over</b> ) <b>with</b> emotions	* strømme over med ( følelser )	
as their <b>hearts overflow with</b> emotions.	* hjerte - - -	
Their <b>eyes brim with</b> tears.	* ng's øjne * ~ være fyldt til randen af > * tårer	
As they can't <b>check</b> their <b>tears</b> , their <b>tears brim over</b> .	* tilbageholde * tårer * tårer * ~ vælde frem & lade være med at græde	
The <b>gushing</b> guests <b>bubble</b> ( <b>over</b> ) <b>with</b> excitement.	* overstrømmende * strømme over af ( sinds- bevægelse )	
<b>30</b> <b>Entering into matrimony</b> , the bride and bridegroom are	* træde ind i ægtestanden	
united in the <b>holy matrimony</b> so now she is his <b>lawfully</b>	* hellige * ægteskab * lovformligt	
<b>wedded</b> wife, and he is her <b>lawfully wedded</b> husband.	* ægteviet ( hustru ) * - - - ( husbond ) ~ lovformlige ægtemand	
The wedding ceremony <b>occupied</b> about half an hour.	* vare / tage x ( tid )	
The doors open and the audience <b>spill out</b> of the church.	* myldre ud	
<b>Spilling into</b> the <b>churchyard</b> , people <b>spill</b> slowly.	* sprede sig > * ud på kirkegården * =	
A marriage provides <b>conjugal rights</b> for the <b>spouses</b> ,	* ægteskabelig * rettighed * ægtefælle	
and, <b>confining</b> themselves <b>to conjugal love</b> , they have	* begrænse sig til > * = * kærlighed, erotik	
no sexual activities <b>beyond</b> the <b>confines</b> of <b>marriage</b> .	* udenfor * rammer ⇔ * ægteskabets	

## THE WEDDING FESTIVITIES

**1347** After the marriage ceremony, the **newly married couple**

**celebrate** their **wedding** at a **wedding reception**.

After the wedding, the **married couple**, their **next of kin**,  
and all the other **wedding guests** look forward to **celebrate**

at the **wedding breakfast** and **wedding party**.

The married couple **receive** a lot of **wedding presents**.

Having **had** a lot of **presents**, Ann and Al **thank**

all **kith and kin** (o-f) **for** the presents.

They get some **silverware** of **solid silver**, not **in plate**.

**10** Al already has some family **silver** or family **plate**,

**Silver-** or **gold-plated** articles are in **silver** or **gold plate**.

A **goldsmith** makes, repairs or sells articles in gold.

**Gold foil** and the thinner **gold leaf** are gold hammered into  
thin sheets by **goldbeating**, and often used for **gilding**.

The term gilding covers a number of decorative techniques  
for applying gold leaf or **gold powder** to solid surfaces  
such as wood, stone or metal.

Methods of gilding include hand application and glueing,  
chemical gilding, and **electroplating**, called **gold plating**.

**20** When **gold leaf** is **rolled onto** and **welded to** an object  
of another base metal, it is covered in **filled / rolled gold**.

A **silversmith** makes, repairs or sells articles made of silver.

Some of the silver has been used for **silver `service**:  
a style of serving food at formal meals in which  
the person serving uses a **silver fork** and **spoon**.

In America **silver** or **silverware** includes **utensils**  
such as **cutlery** or **flatware** (A) made of stainless steel.

As silver, if exposed to the oxygen in the air, eventually  
gets **stained**, it has to be polished or put in a chemical **bath**.

**30** One of the guests is a real **silver `tongue**.

As a **silver-tongued** person he has great skill at  
persuading people to believe or to do what he says.

He also has a **razor-sharp mind**.

\* bryllupsfest

\* de nygifte

\* fejre >

\* bryllup

\* ...s-

\* reception

\* ægtepar

\* den nærmeste familie

\* bryllupsgæst

\* feste

\* ved >

\* ~ bryllupsmiddag

\* ~ ...fest

\* få / modtage >

\* bryllupsgave

\* =

\* gave

\* takke ng. >  
( kun trans.)

\* venner og frænder

\* for ngt.

\* sølvtøj

\* i plet, ~ forsølvet / -gyldt

\* sølvtøj

\* sølv- og guldtoj

\* guld-

\* sølvpletteret

\* sølv-

\* guldplet

\* guldsmed

\* guldfolie

\* ~ bladguld

\* guldslagning

\* forgyldning

\*

\* guldpulver

\*

\*

\* elektroplettering

\* guldplettering

\* bladguld

\* rullet på ngt.

\* ( blive ) svejset til ngt.

\* guldduble

\* sølvsmed

\* " sølvbestik servering "

\*

\* sølv-

\* gaffel

\* ske

\* sølv / -tøj  
& rustfri ståltoj

\* =

\* husholdningsredskaber

\* bestik

\* =

\*

\* misfarvet

\* bad

\*

\* ~ person, godt skåre for tungebåndet  
med talegaverne i orden

\*

\* ~ knivskarp

\* tankegang

**1348** Home from work, most people like to **dress down**.

The married couple each gets a **tracksuit / jogging suit** consisting of a **tracksuit jacket** and **tracksuit bottoms** // a **jogging jacket** and **jogging trousers** E/A **pants**.

A **sweatsuit** (A) or **sweats** consist of a **sweatshirt** and **sweatpants**.

Ann also gets a **jumpsuit** and a **trouser suit** E/A **pantsuit**.

Al also gets a **boiler suit** or **overalls** E/A **coveralls**, and a pair of **dungarees** E/A **overalls**.

**10** Al and Ann each get a **wet suit** for diving.

Wearing a **diving suit / dress**, a **diver sinks to a depth of** x metre, and then works **underwater at a depth of** x metre.

A diving suit is **unsuited for** swimming.

( A **suit of armour** is used for **warfare**, and a **spacesuit** is used for **space travel**. )

They get a **popular science** book including a lot of **colour plates**.

A picture shows an **amadillo** with its **protective shell** of protective **plates**, and a **hedgehog rolled up into a ball**.

**20** A hedgehog has **razor-`sharp** teeth, and **sharp spines**.

A **silverback** is a male adult gorilla with white or **silver** hair across its back.

**Silverfish** are nocturnal insects that live in houses, and feeding on **starch** they may damage wallpaper, books etc.

The book describes how the wind and animals **spread pollen from the stamens**, and the **seeds** of the fruits.

Pollen is received by the **stigma** on the **ovary** of a flower.

**Sunspots** sometimes appear on the sun's surface.

A **sun** may be any star around which planets move.

**30** A **nebula** is a bright area in the sky consisting either of a mass of gas or dust or of a cloud of stars.

Ann and Al only have a **nebulous concept** of astronomy.

**Research scientists** work to find answers **beyond the limits / borders / confines** of human **knowledge**.

\* ~ klæde sig mere afslappet på

\* træningsdragt

\* træningstrøje

\* træningsbukser

\* =

\* træningsdragt

\* træningstrøje

\* -bukser

\* jumpsuit

\* buksedragt

\* kedeldragt

\* overalls

\* våddragt

\* dykkerdragt \* dykker \* synke \* til en dybde på >

\* x \* under vandet

\* ved en dybde på x

\* uegnet til ng.

\* ~ rustning

\* krigsførsel

\* rumdragt

\* rumrejse

\* populær-

\* ~ videnskabelig- ( bog )

\* farve-

\* ~ plancher

\* bæltedyr

\* beskyttelses-

\* skal

\* plade

\* pindsvin

\* rullet sammen til >

\* kugle

\* ( barberblad ) ~ syleskarpe

\* spidse

\* pigge

\* sølvryg

\* ~ sølvgråt ( hår )

\*

\* sølvfisk

\* stivelse

\* sprede >

\* pollen

\* fra >

\* støvdrager

\* frø

\* støvfang

\* frugtknude

\* solplet

\* sol

\* stjerne-tåge

\*

\* tåget

\* opfattelse / forståelse af ng.

\* forskning

~ videnskabsforsker

\* videnskabsmand

\* hinsides >

\* grænserne for >

\* viden



## WEDDING FEAST / FESTIVITIES

**1349** In the evening and night, the **wedding festivities** take place at the inn where the **wedding party celebrate** at a **wedding feast**.

The dinner is £ 45 a **plate** plus £ 5 per person for **sundries**.  
sündriz

The wedding is an **occasion of great festivity**, creating a **festive** atmosphere.

An and Al have arranged a **seating plan** together, and written **place cards**.

The **table arrangement** or **seating arrangement**

**10** wasn't easy to make.

They **aim at suiting** everybody / all their guests.

They **aim to put together** the **dinner partners**

so that they **suit** their particular interests of one another.

Children may have to sit on a **cushion** at the dinner table.

A **family** consists of parents, sisters and brothers,

**grandparents** ( **grandmother** and **grandfather** ),

**grandchildren** ( **granddaughters** and **grandsons** ),

**great grandparents** and **great grandchildren**,

**great great grandparents etc.**,

**20 uncles, aunts, cousins, nephews and nieces**,

**granduncles etc.**

The **kin** (pl.) or the **kin(s)folk** (pl.) consist of **kinsmen**  
kin and **kinwomen, descending from** the same **ancestors**.

Some **relatives** are **near of kin**.

At a marriage, members of two families **not of kin**

are hereby **related by marriage**.

**Ties of kindred** exist only **among kindred**,  
`kindrêd while **ties of kinship** may exist both **between** people of kin and people not of kin as between **kindred spirits**.

**30** The **`in-laws** (pl.) are the **`parents-in-law** ( **father-in-law**, and **mother-in-law** ) **sister-in-law, brothe-in-law** etc.

Having been married for 25 years two years ago,

Al's parents celebrated their **silver wedding anniversary**  
( their **silver wedding** E&/A& their **silver anniversary** ).

After 40, 50, and 60 years come their **ruby, golden**,

and **diamond wedding & / anniversary**

\* bryllups- \* festligheder

\* bryllups- \* selskab \* feste

\* bryllups- \* festmåltid

\* pr. kuvert \* diverse ( udgifter )

\* anledning / lejlighed til ngt. \* festivitas, opstemthed

\* festlig, opstemt

\* ~ bordplan

\* bordkort

\* =

\*

\* sigte mod at - \* tilfredsstille /  
gøre ng. tilpas

\* = \* bordherre / -dame

\* indpasse ngt. til ng.

\* pude

\* familie

\* bedsteforældre

\* børnebørn

\* olde- \* =

\* tipolde

\* onkel \* tante \* kusine \* nevø \* niece  
moster / fætter

\* gran-

\* slægt \* slægstninge \* mandlige ...

\* kvindelige ... \* nedstamme fra \* stamfader/ -moder  
( pl.) aner

\* slægtning \* nær af > \* slægt  
familiemedlem ~ nærbeslægtet

\* ikke i slægt / beslægtet ( med hinanden )

\* beslægtet gennem > \* ægteskab  
& besvogret

\* bånd af > \* slægtsskab \* blandt ng. \* slægtninge  
familiemedlemmer

\* ... af > \* familie- / åndsslægtsskab \* mellem ng.  
~ ( ånds- ) slægtskabsfølelse

\* beslægtet \* ånd

\* svigerfamilie ~ åndsfrænde \* svigerforældre \* svigerfar

\* svigermor \* svigerinde \* svoger

\*

\* sølvbryllupsdag

\* sølvbryllup \* =

\* rubin- \* guld-

\* diamanbryllupsdag

**1350** The restaurant's **reputation** is **without a blemish**.

A cook places the **dough** on a **baking sheet**.

He uses a **sheet** of **stainless steel**.

They sometimes bake **doughnuts** (A often **donuts** )

and **kindred** ( fo. ) cakes.

Much kitchen furniture is made of stainless **sheet metal**.

Some fruits and vegetables need **washing** before use.

Making a **salad**, the cook **washes** a **lettuce** and other  
vegetables **thoroughly** before he cuts the ingredients into

**10** pieces, and mixes them with (a) **salad dressing**.

They use **iceberg lettuce** or a **kindred salad**, **cucumber**  
and **French dressing** which is a mixture of oil, **vinegar** etc.

When they **blanch** the vegetables, they put them  
in boiling water for a short time.

They sometimes use **sun-dried** tomatoes.

Salads like potato, pasta, and fruit **salad** may be mixed with  
mayonnaise, crème fraiche or yogurt / yogh(o)urt.

A salad may be made with **curd(s)** or **kindred** products.

**Curd** is made by **curdling**, a process of **coagulation**

**20** and **precipitation** when milk turns sour.

**Raw milk** naturally contains **lactobacilli** ( sg: / <llus )  
which break down the **lactose** into **lactic acid**  
in an **enzymatic** / **enzymid catabolic** process.

An **enzyme** is a protein that acts as a biological **catalyst**,  
i.e. it **catalyses** ( **facilitates** ) a specific chemical **reaction**.

The increased acidity **curdles** the milk  
as it **tangles (up)** / **coagulates** the **milk protein** ( **casein** )  
and **precipitates** a white soft **solid**.

So when the milk **curdles**, and curds **precipitate**, it's

**30** the protein that **tangles (up)** / **coagulates** / **congeals into**  
a **precipitate** called curd(s).

**Rennet** is a complex of enzymes produced in the stomachs  
of ruminant mammals, and can be used to separate milk into  
liquid **whey** and curds used for cheese making.

**Cottage** /eE **curd cheese** is a fresh mild cheese.

It is drained, but not pressed so the individual curds remain,  
and some whey remains.

* omdømme, ry	* uden	* skamplet
* dej	~ pletfri	* bageplade
* plade	* rustfrit	* stål
* =		
* beslægtet / lignende ( slags )		
* pladestål		
* skylning		
* salat	* vaske / skylle >	* salathoved
* grundigt		
* salat-		* dressing
* icebergsalat	* lignende slags	* salat
* fransk dressing		* agurk
* blanchere ngt.		* eddike
*		
* soltørret		
* salat		
*		
* kvark		* beslægtet, lignende
* =	* skillening, udfældning	* coagulation
* udfældning		
* råmælk		* mælkesyrebakterier
* laktose		* mælke-      * syre
* enzymatisk	* katabolisk, - nedbrydnings- ( proces )	
* enzym		* katalysator
* katalysere ( formidle / fremskynde ) >		* ( kemisk ) reaktion
* ~ få ngt. til at skille		
* danne netværk	* koagulere	* mælke-      * protein ( kasein )
* udfælde >		* fast stof
* skille		* udfældes
* danne netværk	* koagulere	* størkne til >
* udfældningsprodukt, bundfald		
* ( oste- ) løbe		
*		
* valle		
* hytte-		* ost
*		
*		

<b>1351</b> Bacteria and fungi that <b>ferment</b> carbohydrates, fê`ment	* fermentere > ( syrne / få ngt. til at gære )	* kulhydrater
<b>break ( ) down</b> carbohydrates in a process called <b>fermentation</b> , and leave gasses, alcohol, or acid as <b>waste ( matter )</b> .	* nedbryde > * affald / affalds-	* kulhydrater * fermentering gæring / syring * stof
<b>Airborne bacteria</b> and <b>spores of fungi</b> are everywhere in ordinary air so unprotected food such as fruit, vegetables and also <b>pasteurized</b> milk that contains carbonhydrates eventually <b>ferment</b> .	* luftbårne * bakterier * pasteuriseret * fermentere, gære, gå i gæring, syrne	* sporer * svampe ~ svampesporer
Foods can be prevented from unwanted decaying by <b>preservation</b> in salt, sugar, or vinegar	* bevaring, ~ syltning	
<b>10</b> A high concentration of acid in vinegar kills intruders. When foods <b>are preserved</b> in salt or sugar, the high concentrations of salt or sugar outside intruding organisms will kill them by sucking water out of their cells due to a process called <b>osmosis</b> .	* * ( blive ) bevare / ~ syltet i ngt.	
Osmosis is the tendency of a <b>solvent</b> , usually water, to <b>diffuse / permeate</b> through a <b>semipermeable</b> membrane, e.g. a cell wall, <b>permeable to</b> the <b>solvent</b> but not the <b>solute</b> , and into a <b>solution</b> where the concentration is higher.	* osmose * opløsningsmiddel * diffundere / trænge gennem > * gennemtrængelig for > * opløsning * opløst i ngt.	* ~ halvgennem- trængelig * opløsnings- middel * opløst stof
A solution is a solute <b>dissolved</b> in a solvent.	* opløsning * diffusion * gennemtrængning	
<b>20</b> <b>Dissolution, diffusion</b> and <b>permeation</b> are driven by heat as all atomic structures as atoms, ions and molecules start <b>thermodynamic movements</b> with increasing intensity at temperatures above minus 273 ° C = 0 ° Kelvin.	* opløst i ngt. * termodynamiske	* bevægelser
Preparing a perfect meal, a cook must <b>waste</b> some food. He selects the best parts of the <b>raw material</b> , and throws ( ) away <b>the rest</b> / eA <b>trashes</b> the rest. There is little <b>wastage</b> from a <b>lean cut</b> of meat. It seems such a <b>waste</b> to throw ( ) out good food just because of <b>slight blemishes</b> , so the new cooks try not to	* lade ngt. gå til spilde frådse med ngt. * ~ råvarer * resten * spild * spild * ~ mindre, ubetydelig	* smide ngt væk * mager udskæring
<b>30</b> let good food <b>with</b> a slight <b>blemish go / run to waste</b> . The manager hates unnecessary <b>waste</b> so he <b>checks up on</b> his inferiours. Last year he <b>blanched at</b> the economic figures: he <b>blanched visibly</b> when he was <b>informed of</b> the <b>wastage</b> .	* med > * spild * ~ holde kontrol med ng. * blegne ved ngt. * blegne * synligt * informeret om >	* gå til spilde * gå til spilde

<b>1352 Food waste</b> and <b>waste food</b> , and other <b>waste(s)</b>	* madaffald	* affaldsmad	* ( slags ) affald
may be thrown into a <b>waste bag</b> , a <b>waste sack</b> , or <b>waste bin</b> .	* affalds- / skralde-	* -pose	* -sæk
A <b>waste-disposal unit</b> , a <b>waste disposer</b> or a <b>Disposal</b> <sup>TM</sup>	* affaldskværn		
is a machine, connected to the <b>waste pipe</b> of the kitchen sink,	* afløbsrør		
for cutting food waste into small pieces.	*		
<b>Rubbish</b> as in <b>household rubbish</b> and <b>garden rubbish</b>	* affald	* husholdnings...	* have...
is the usual word in <u>British English</u> for the things that you	*		
throw away at home in a <b>rubbish bag</b> or <b>rubbish bin</b> .	* affalds- / skraldepose	* affalds- / skralde-	{ bøtte / spand
The streets will be <b>littered with</b> rubbish if people don't	* ( blive ) tilsvinet med ngt.		
<b>10</b> throw their rubbish in a <b>dustbin</b> or <b>litter bin</b> .	* skraldespand		
A beautiful place is easily <b>blemished</b> by litter.	* skæmme ngt.		
<b>Refuse collection</b> and <b>refuse disposal</b> (E&A) takes place	* affalds-	* indsamling	* ...-
when the rubbish is collected by the <b>dustmen</b> or <b>binmen</b> (E).	* skraldemand		* bortskaffelse
If a dustman <b>spills</b> a bin or sack of <b>bits</b> of <b>rubbish</b> ,	* ~ spilde > * stumper af > * affald	* fra	( bøtte / sæk )
bits of rubbish <b>spill</b> ( <b>over</b> ) <b>onto</b> the <b>pavement</b> .	* spildes ud over ngt.		* brolægning, E& fortov
<u>In America</u> , inside the home, <b>trash</b> is dry material while	* affald		
<b>garbage</b> tends to mean waste food and other wet material.	* affald		
In America the garbage and trash should go	*		
into a <b>garbage</b> ( <b>can</b> ) or <b>trash can</b> and be collected by	* affalds- / skralde-		* bøtte / spand
<b>20</b> <b>garbage men</b> or <b>garbage collectors</b> .	* skraldemand		* =
If a bag, bin or can (A) is <b>filled to overflowing</b> , bits of waste	* ~ overfylde ngt.		
refuse /A garbage/A trash / eE rubbish easily <b>spill</b> ( <b>over</b> ).	* spildes		
If a <b>garbage man</b> (A) <b>spills bits</b> of garbage and trash,	* skraldemand	* spilde >	* stumper
bits of garbage and trash <b>spill out</b> all over the <b>sidewalk</b> .	* vælde ud		* fortov
<b>Refuse</b> as in <b>domestic refuse</b> or <b>household refuse</b>	* affald	* husholdnings-	* =
is a formal word and is used in both England and America.	*		
So a <b>refuse collector</b> is either a dustman or a binman (E),	* renovationsarbejder		
a garbage collector or a garbage man (A).	*		
In the winter when the <b>paving</b> may be covered	* belægning / belægningsmateriale		
<b>30</b> with a <b>sheet</b> of ice and water, the refuse collector may <b>slip</b>	* tyndt lag		* glide
as well as the <b>refuse lorry</b> E/A <b>van</b> or <b>refuse dustcart</b> (E),	* skraldevogn	* -bil	* -lastbil
the <b>refuse-collection</b> A/A <b>garbage truck</b> may <b>skid</b>	* skraldevogn / -bil	* =	* skride
on icy <b>paving</b> /A& <b>pavement</b> / E on an icy <b>road surface</b> .	* vejbelægning		* =
' I <b>get the picture</b> , ' Al assures.	* ~ se det for sig		
Taken to the <b>municipal dump</b> , the refuse is taken	* kommunal		* losseplads
to a <b>refuse dump</b> ; to a <b>rubbish</b> E/A <b>garbage dump</b> //	* =		
E a <b>rubbish tip</b> , where it's placed in a <b>rubbish heap</b> .	* =		* skraldebunke

**1353** The cooks have **prepared** a large **meal**, so the inn can **provide** /eE **lay** () **on** a huge **spread** for the party.

Soup easily **spills** so it's easy to **spill** soup.

If a cook **fills** the **bowl** too **full**, the soup might **spill out of it** onto the table cloth, or worse onto the guest's clothes.

To prevent soup from **spilling**, its important not to **fill** the **bowl** of the spoon **to overflowing**.

If soup **spills over**, it may **spill over onto** the table, or worse **spill on** people's clothes.

**10** A waiter must not **spill onto** the table or **spill on** people's clothes.

If a waiter **spills** food – **spills it onto** the table or worse **spills it on** people's clothes – he's in trouble.

A guest can have a large **plate of** soup.

The main course is **served** from **dishes** and **platters**.

The waiters **serve** the guests a **plate of** the main course.

They **serve** a **plateful of** the main course **to** each guest.

When a waiter **serves** a guests **with** food from a platter, the **peas** easily **spill**.

**20** **Sauce** or **gravy** is served from a **sauce** or **gravy boat**.

Some guests like the main course to **swim in** sauce.

Sauces and gravy may **curdle**.

A guests may eat two **platefuls** or more.

A well-mannered person waits till he has **finished chewing** before he **starts** talking.

A cup of coffee **finishes** the meal.

The four-course dinner **finishes with** coffee and cognac or **liqueur** ( a kind of sweet **liquor** ).

Some people **have a quick drink** before they leave home,

**30** and some have **a quick one** whenever there's a chance.

The party is **in full swing** right from the start.

\* tilberede > \* måltid  
 \* sørge for / tilvejebringe > \* ( stort ) ( fest-) måltid  
 \* spildes, løbe over \* spilde ngt.  
 \* fylde > \* ~ terrin \* fuld \* flyde ud af ngt.  
 \*  
 \* spildes, flyde / løbe over  
 \* fylde > \* fordybning ( i skeen ) \* til overflydning  
 \* flyde / løbe over \* - - - ( og spildes ) på ngt.  
 \* - - - ( og spildes ) på ngt.  
 \* spilde på ngt.  
 \* - - -  
 \* spilde ngt. \* - - - på ngt.  
 \* =  
 \* tallerken ( -fuld ) ( af ) ngt.  
 \* servere ngt. ( fra ) > \* dybt fad \* flat fad  
 \* ... ngt. > \* tallerken ( -fuld ) ( af ) ngt.  
 \* ... > \* tallerkenfuld af ngt. > \* til ngt.  
 \* betjene / forsyne ng. med ngt.  
 \* ært \* spildes  
 \* ~ ryge / trille af / ned  
 \* sovs \* sovs \* båd  
 \* ~ sovseekande  
 \* svømme i ngt.  
 \* skille  
 \* tallerkenfuld  
 \* være færdig med at - \* tygge  
 \* ~ tygget af munden  
 \* begynde på at-  
 \* ngt. afslutte ngt.  
 \* ngt. slutte med ngt.  
 \* likør \* alkoholisk drik  
 \* ~ få sig > \* en hurtig drink  
 \* en lille en  
 \* i fuld sving

<b>1354</b> The waiters carry out <b>dishes</b> , and <b>piles of dirty plates</b> :	* fad	* stabel af >	* tallerkener
<b>soup plates, dinner plates, dessert plates, side plates,</b>	* suppe- ( dyb )	* middags- ( flad )	* dessert- * side-
and <b>tea plates</b> .	* ( te- ), ~ kage-		* tallerken
The <b>cutlery</b> eE/A <b>flatware</b> is <b>plate</b> :	* spise- og serveringsbestik		* plettøj
not <b>solid</b> silver or gold but silver or gold <b>plating</b> .	* massiv		* belægning plettering * guld-
Most of it is <b>silver plate</b> and just a few things are <b>gold plate</b> :	* sølvplet		
usually <b>brass washed / plated with</b> silver or gold	* messing	* ~ overtrukket / pletteret / belagt med ngt.	
Many kind of things are <b>plated with</b> a metal <b>wash</b> ,	* - = -	* ~ belægning fra væskebad	
or <b>plated with</b> some hard substance.	* ~ forsynet med plader af ngt.		
<b>10 Ordinarily</b> most people use a stainless steel cutlery set.	* ~ til daglig		
In America <b>hollowware</b> means silver dishes for serving,	* ~ sølvfade		
and <b>cutlery</b> means all kinds of sharp knives.	* knivtøj		
The bridegroom <b>carves</b> the <b>iced wedding cake</b> .	* skære ngt. for	* glasseret	* bryllupskage
The cake is <b>iced</b> (E): it is covered with <b>icing</b> (U,E).	* glasseret		* glasur
<b>Chilling</b> a cake, the <b>confectioner</b> lets it <b>chill</b> until <b>set</b> .	* køle ngt.	* konditor	* køle * ~ fået fasthed
He uses <b>icing sugar</b> mixed with water to <b>ice</b> (E) the cake.	* flormelis		* glassere ngt.
In America, a <b>frosted</b> cake is covered with <b>frosting</b> .	* glasseret		* glasur
Having mixed <b>confectioners' sugar</b> or <b>powdered sugar</b>	* flormelis		
with water the confectioner <b>frosts</b> a cake.	* glassere ngt.		
<b>20 A confectioner</b> makes <b>confections</b> and <b>confectionery</b> .	* konditorkage		* konfekt
The party sing a song – one of the numerous works	*		
which have <b>spilled from</b> the composers <b>pen</b> .	* flyde fra >		* pen
<b>Pimping</b> the song <b>up</b> , he has <b>wed</b> the tune <b>to</b> the verse.	* peppe ngt. op	* ~ tilpasse ngt. til ngt.	
All the guests enjoy the <b>marriage of</b> lyrics and tune.	* ~ forening af ngt.		
Lifting his fingers rhythmically from the <b>fretboard</b> ,	* gribebræt m. bånd		
the guitar player accentuates the rhythm by <b>muting</b> the strings.	* dæmpe ngt.		
The <b>neck</b> of a <b>stringed instrument</b> has a <b>fingerboard</b> ,	* hals * strenget, ~ strenge- * instrument	* gribebræt	
perhaps with <b>frets</b> such as a <b>fretboard</b> of a guitar.	* bånd		
Using a <b>mute</b> , the trumpet player plays a <b>muted</b> trumpet.	* lyddæmper		* lyddæmpet
<b>30</b> When an opera singer from among the guests takes over	*		
the microfone, she <b>steals / hogs</b> the <b>limelight / scene / show</b>	* stjæle / ~optage >	* rampelyset	* = * =
<b>with</b> a very surprising performance.	* med ngt.	* ~ billedet	
She <b>steals</b> the <b>limelight / scene / show from</b> the rest	* ~ stjæle billedet fra ng.		
of the band.	*		
The live music is <b>the icing on the `cake</b> .	* ~ prikken over i'et		

**1355** A few guests leave before midnight.

To **finish with, the rest** have a **midnight snack**.

So the festivities **finish with** midnight snacks.

**Platters of** sandwiches are served for midnight snacks.

Most guests **finish (up) with** a sandwich **on a plate**,  
or a **plate of** sandwiches, washed down with a beer.

or just a **mineal ( water )** or a **soda ( water )**

containing **mineral water** or **soda water** equal to **fizzy water**.

Having soup, most guests take a single **plateful**

**10** while some eat a couple of **plates of** soup.

A **glutton** eats three **platefuls of** soup.

The music **hasn't finished** yet.

The band keeps **getting an encore**.

The **repertoire / repertory** **finishes with** three **encores**

before the band **finishes ( ) off** the show.

Having a **saucy** smile on their faces, the band **finish ( ) off** )  
the show **with a saucy** joke and a **saucy** song.

**Playing a venue**, some rock bands are notorious for **giving**  
**occasion for** trouble, and for **trashing** their hotel rooms.

**20** So when the bands **book a venue** somewhere,  
people at the **concert venue**, and at the hotel involved  
try to take their precautions.

Sometimes it's just a **storm in a teacup** E/A

a **tempest in a teapot**.

The night **finishes with a singalong /E& a singsong**  
at which everybody **join in community singing** (U).

The festivities **finishes at** 3 o'clock in the morning.

The bride looked **picture-perfect**,  
and it's been a **picture-perfect** wedding (AA).

**30** Many marriage customs can be **relegated to the sphere**  
of legend.

The wedded pair are **pictured as** a very happy couple,  
and ( **well** ) **suited ( to one another )**.

\*

\* til at slutte af med \* resten \* ~ natmad

\* ngt. slutte ( af ) med ngt.

\* flat fad ~ med ngt. \* =

\* ng. slutte af med ngt. \* på en tallerken

\* tallerken ~ med ngt.

\* skyllet ned med > \* mineralvand \* sodavand

\* mineralvand \* soda- \* ~ bobble- \* vand

\* tallerkenfuld

\* tallerken ( -fuld ) ( af ) ngt.

\* grovæder \* tallerkenfuld af ngt.  
( jærv )

\* være sluttet

\* få > \* opfordring til et ekstranummer

\* repertoire \* slutte med ngt. \* =

\* ( af- ) slutte ngt.

\* vovet, smøret \* =

\* < med \* vovet \* =

\* spille ( på ) > \* ( spille-) sted \* give >

\* anledning til ( ballade ) \* smadre ngt.

\* booke > \* lokalitet, sted ( for en aktivitet )

\* ~ spille- \* sted

\*

\* ~ en storm i et glas vand

\* =

\* slutte med ngt. \* fællessang \* =

\* samles > \* i fællessang

\* slutte kl. x

\* billedskøn

\* lige after bogen

\* henføre til > \* sfære

\*

\* beskrive ng. som ngt.

\* ( godt ) passende sammen ( / til hinanden )

**1356 Imagining** a truthful husband and a lifelong marriage,

Ann **pictures** a happy husband and a happy marriage.

**Imagining** ( **that** ) her husband will be truthful,

she **pictures** ( **that** ) All will always be **truthful with** her

As she **imagines** Al truthful, she always **pictures** him truthful with her.

As she **imagines** Al a truthful husband,  
she always **pictures** him a truthful husband.

**Imagining** him **to** be truthful,

**10** she **imagines** him always **being** a truthful husband.

As she **imagines** him **staying** true / **to** stay true,  
she **pictures** him **staying** with her till death them part.

As Ann **imagines** Al **as** truthful,  
and **imagines** him **as** a caring husband,  
she always **pictures** him **as** truthful,  
always **pictures** him **as** a caring husband,  
and always **pictures** their marriage **as** happy / **as** a happy one.

In her dreams, however, she once in a while can't help  
**imagining** / **picturing** Al or herself **with** another person.

So **imagining** herself **in** an **unaccustomed** situation,

**20** she **pictures** herself in a situation **unusual for** her.

**Unaccustomed to barrier-breaking imagination,**

and **unaccustomed to** **imagining** her life much different,  
still she sometimes **imagines** / **pictures** herself

( **as** / **being** / **to be** ) unhappy,

( **as** / **being** / **to be** ) someone else,

( **as** / **doing** / **to be** ) something else,

perhaps **back in** her childhood or **in the future**.

She **imagines what** it would be like,  
**pictures who** would be with her,

**30** **imagines where** they would be,

**pictures when** it might be,

**imagines which** possibilities she'd have,

**pictures whether** it could have been possible,

and **imagines how** it might have been possible.

\* forestille sig ngt.

\* - = -

\* - - - at -

\* - = -

\* trofast overfor ng.

\* forestille sig ng. ( som ) adj.

\* - = -

\*

\* - - - ng. ( som ) subst.

\* - = -

\* forestille sig ng. at - , ~ - - - at ng. er ngt.

\* - = -

\* - - - ng. at - , ~ - - - at ng. gør ngt

\* - = -

\* forestille sig ng. som adj.

\* - - - som subst.

\* & beskrive ng. som adj.

\* - - - ng. som subst.

\* - - - ngt. som adj.

\*

\* forestille sig selv + prep.

\* - = -

\* uvant

\* - = -

\* usædvanlig for ng.

\* uvant med ngt. \* grænseoverskridende \* forestilling

\* ... med at -

\* - - - selv >

\* - - - ( som / at være ) adj.

\* - - - ( som / at være ) ng.

\* - - - ( som / at gøre ) ngt.

\* tilbage i ( barndomme )

\* ( ude ) i fremtiden

\* forestille sig hvxx -

\* - = -

\* - = -

\* - = -

\* - = -

\* - = -

\* - = -



## HONEYMOON

**1357** Going on a skiing holiday for their **honeymoon**, Ann and Al will be on holiday E/A vacation **on** their **honeymoon**.

A travel **brochure** **pictures** the **ski resort** in **picturesque** terms so they have a **picturesque** description of the place.

They **check up on** the **skiing facilities** and the **precipitation**, hopefully **as snow** rather than **rain**.

There is a high **average snowfall** for the ski resort.  
A fall in the temperature may **precipitate** the **moisture** **10** of the air so the moisture **precipitates** as rain or snow.

As Ann and Al are going to **honeymoon** in **Austria**, they shall **spend** their **honeymoon in** the **Alps**.

They will **be on** their **honeymoon** for two weeks.  
They going on a **holiday tailor-made** just **for** them.  
Al **packs** a single **suitcase** while Ann packs two **cases**.  
Al **packs** a **striped** shirt, and a blue and green **chek** jacket, i.e. a **check** (<ed ) jacket with blue and green **checks**.

They each bring a **sponge bag / toilet bag / washbag** E/A **toiletry bag**.

**20** The **honeymooners** look forward to **go skiing**.

The **jumping-off place / point** is far from the airport.  
Al **checks** the **check-in time** at the airport.  
He **checks with** the railway company **what** time the train is leaving and **checks which platform** (E) the train **departs from**.

He **checks which track** (A) the train **departs ( from )** (A).  
At the day of **departure**, there is a slight **delay in** the train traffic.

They only had a **snack** for breakfast  
**30** so they have a **mid-morning snack** at a **snack bar**.  
It's healthier to **snack on** fruit rather than chocolate.  
Both tea and soup are mere **wash**, though.

\* hvedebrødsdage / bryllupsrejse  
\* tage på > \* en ( ski ) ferie \* som bryllupsferie / -rejse  
\* ferie \* på ( deres ) ...  
\* = \* skildre \* skisportssted \* malerisk  
\* =  
\* undersøge vedrørende > \* ski- \* facilitet  
\* nedbør / -smængde \* som sne \* regn  
\* gennemsnits- \* snefald  
\* fortætte > \* fugtighed  
\* -s  
\* ~ være på bryllupsrejse + adv. \* Østrig  
\* tilbringe > \* hvedebrødsdage \* i Alperne  
\* være på > \* bryllupsrejse  
\* ferie \* skræddersyet til ng.  
\* pakke ngt. \* kuffert \* =  
\* sribet \* tern  
\* tern ( -et ) \* tern  
\* svampe- \* taske \* toilet- \* taske \* vasketaske  
~ toilettaske ~ toilettaske  
\* =  
\* bryllupsrejsende \* stå på ski  
dyrke skisport  
\* rejseudgangspunkt  
afrejsested  
\* tjekke / kontrollere / \* tjekindtidspunkt  
undersøge ngt.  
\* kontrollere hos ng. hvxx -  
\* ... hvxx \* perron  
\* afgang fra <  
\* = \* = \* forlade <  
( afgang fra )  
\* afgang \* forsinkelse i ( trafik )  
\*  
\* ~ lille smule mad  
\* ~ formiddags- \* ~ mellemmåltid \* snackbar  
\* ~ spise ngt. som mellem- / hurtigt måltid  
\* tyndt pjask

## AT THE AIRPORT

**1358** Most official **markings** are in **stripes** or **checks**.

The **check-in** is at least an hour before departure.

They **check in** an hour and a half before departure so there will be time for a drink if they **feel so inclined**.

**Luggage** eE/eA **baggage** can be left for a short time at a **left luggage (office)** E/A a **checkroom** for **baggage**.

They go to the **check-in** which takes place at a **desk** in the terminal for **foreign departures** where the passengers **line up** /E& **queue up** at the **check-in desk** to check in, and get a **boarding pass** / E& **card**.

**10** There's another terminal for **domestic flights**: **domestic arrivals** and **domestic departures**.

**Ticking** (E) their names ( **off** ) on the **passenger list**, an official **ticks** the passengers **off** by **putting a tick** (E) beside their names, or by **ticking a box** beside their names.

In America people **lined up** at a **check-in counter**.

**Checking** their names on a list, an official **checks** ( ) **off** ( the names of ) the passengers by **putting a check ( mark )** beside their names, or by **checking a box** beside their names.

He may also **put a mark against** a name or an item

**20** by means of a **cross**.

When not writing, some people **have the habit of rolling** the pencil between their fingers.

When they **check in** their **luggage** eE/eA **baggage**, some people have to pay for the **excess baggage** (EA).

When Ann and Al have **checked** their bags and cases **in**, their luggage is put on the plane by **baggage handlers**.

Having **checked** (A) their **baggage** (eA), people go to the departure **lounge**.

Ann and Al **check** ( ) **out** the prices at the duty-free shop.

**30** They **travel first class** as there is more room to **spread out in first class**.

Carrying their **hand luggage / baggage**, they go to the departure **gate** where the plane **is boarding** and the passengers are waiting to **board** ( the plane ).

Having their boarding pass / card checked, the passengers

**go aboard / on board // get on(to)** ( the plane ) one by one.

* afmærkning	* stribe	* tern
* indskrivning		
* indskrive sig		
* føle sig tilbøjelig til det		
* bagage		
* bagagegarderobe		
* indskrivningssted		* skranke
* udenrigs >		* afgang
* stille sig / stå i kø	* & indskrivnings-	* skranke
* boarding-		* pas
* ~ indenrigs >		* flyvning
* ~ ... >	* ankomst	* afgang
* afmærke / tjekke ngt.	* på >	* passager-
* tjekke / mærke ng. ( & ngt.) af		* liste
* tjekmærke >		* hak
* stille sig / stå i kø	* check-in	* skranke
* afmærke / tjekke ngt.		* på ( liste
* tjekke / mærke ng. / ngt. af	* sætte >	* hak
* tjekmærke >		* felt
* sætte >		* et mærke ved ngt.
* kryds	& afmærke / -krydse	
* have den vane at -		
* rulle ( blyant )		
* indskrive >		* bagage
* bagageovervægt		
* tjekke ngt. ind		
* bagage-		* ~ arbejder
* indskrive >		* bagage
* venterum		
* tjekke / undersøge ngt.		
* rejse på ...		* første klasse
* brede / strække sig	* på >	* første
* håndbagage		* klasse
* gate		* ~ tage passagerer ombord
* ~ gå ombord ( i fly )		
* gå ombord ( på fly )		* = ( stige på ) ( fly )

## ARRIVING AT THE AIRPORT: ARRIVING IN MUNICH

**1359** Checking the baggage, the **Customs check** E/A <s  
( the baggage ) **for** drugs, weapons, and **sundry** other items  
such as goods **on** which **duty** has not been **paid**.

Suspected of drug smuggling, a traveller is **mauled**  
by a **customs officer**.

A **suspicious** traveller is caught during a routine **check**.

**Ingenious** when it comes to **checking**, the custom officers  
**seize** all kinds of **smuggled goods**.

The police **check`up on** the smuggler's statements,  
**10** and **check`out** his **alibi** carefully.

\*

## GOING THROUGH GERMANY

Munich is the **provincial capital** of **Bavaria**.

Western Germany including Bavaria was **preoccupied** land,  
**preoccupied** by the Western allied **occupation**(<al ) forces.

Eastern Germany including Berlin was **preoccupied** by  
Russian forces, but later on Germany was divided into  
an American, a British, a French, and a Soviet **occupation**  
**zone**, just like Berlin was divided into four **sectors**.

**20** One might **imagine oneself** back in the Second World War.

During the **Holocaust**, prior to and during World War I I,  
the **Nazies** were guilty of systematic **mass extermination** of  
**Jews**, and other **ostracized** groups in **concentration camps**.

The Nazis wanted to **annihilate / wipe out / extinguish**  
all **Jewish influence** simply by **annihilating / wiping () out /**  
**exterminate** all Jews in Germany and the **occupied** countries

**Persecuting** Jews all over, The Nazis established a lot of  
concentration camps many of them **occupying** a **vast area**.

The prisoners were systematically **mauled / savaged**

**30** by the guards and by experimenting doctors.

Many prisoners had **fugitive** thoughts and ideas of **escape**  
as **fugitives from** their **tormentors** and **from** hopelessness.

Like the lions **maul / savage** a **buffalo**,  
**fierce** and **vicious** guard dogs may **maul / savage** prisoners  
who made an **attempt to** escape.

Camp guards, known to be **lousy** if not **cruel**, would  
move in to **finish () off** a **fugitive** prisoner with their rifles.

\* München

\* toldvæsnat

\* tjekke / undersøge ngt.

\* ... ngt. for ng

\* =

\* diverse

\* betale told af ngt.

\* ( blive ) maltrakteret

taget hårdhændet fat i / blive befamlet

\* - - ( af ng. )

\* toldbetjent

\* mistænkelig

\* tjek, undersøgelse

\* udspekuleret

\* undersøge

\* beslaglægge >

\* smugler-

\* gods, varer

\* tjekke / kontrollere / efterprøve ngt.

\* =

\* alibi

\* tyskland

\* provins-

\* hovedstad

\* Bayern

\* besat af ng. forud for andre

\* først besat af ng.

\* besættelses-

\* =

\*

\* besættelses-

\* zone

\* sektor

\* føle / tro sig hensat til ngt.

\* holocaust ( massakre, kæmpebrand / -katastrofe )

\* nazist

\* masseudryddelse

\* jøde

\* udstødt

\* koncentrationslejr

\* udryde / udslette ngt.

\* jødisk

\* indflyelse

\* udrydde / = >

\* ... ng.

\* besat ( land )

\* forfølge ng.

\* optage / fylde >

\* udbredt  
stort

\* område

\* mishandle / maltraktere ng.

\*

\* flygtig ( ide )

\* flugt

\* flygtning fra ( ng&t. )

\* plageånd

\* maltraktere >

~ angribe og slå i ng.

\* bøffel

( bison )

\* bidsk, glubsk

\* - - -

\* gøre et ( vanskeligt ) forsøg på at -

\* luset, ~ ubehagelig

\* rå, ~ ondsindet  
skadefro

\* gøre det af med ng.

\* flygtende

<b>1360</b> Besides hunger, <b>wasting</b> diseases <b>ravaged</b> the camps.	* udtærende ( sygdom )	* hæрге ( sted )
The prisoners had absolutely no room to <b>spread out</b>	* brede sig, strække ud	
in their <b>sleeping accomodation</b> ( A < s ).	* sove-	* indretning, ~ sted / plads
Bad possibilities of <b>hygiene</b> , and <b>infestation(s) of vermin</b>	* hygiejne	* hærgen af > * skadedyr `haid\$î-ne utøj
made the prisoners <b>spread</b> all kinds of diseases.	* sprede ( sygdom )	
As all camps and prisoners were <b>infested with vermin</b>	* befængt med / hærgen af >	* utøj
such as <b>rats</b> and <b>lice</b> ( a <b>louse</b> ), the <b>diseases spread</b> easily.	* rotte	* lus
Epidemics <b>raged</b> through the <b>unhygienic</b> camps.	* rase + adv.	* uhygieinisk ( sted )
Few measures were taken to <b>check</b> the <b>rapidity</b>	* kontrollere / standse ngt.	* hurtighed
<b>10</b> with which the epidemics were spreading.	*	
<b>Being wasted by</b> disease and hunger,	* blive hærgen / udtæret af ( sygdom )	
the prisoners soon <b>wasted away / became emaciated</b> .	*	
Their <b>frames</b> looked <b>horribly wasted</b> .	* krop, legeme	* skrækindjagende
They could do little to prevent the <b>spread of</b> disease.	-sbygning, skikkelse	* hærgen udtæret
Those who weren't <b>killed</b> / A& <b>wasted</b> in the <b>gas chambers</b>	* ( blive ) dræbt	* gas-
by the end of the war were liberated in a terrible condition	~ omkomme	* kammer
with thin, <b>wasted</b> bodies and faces, arms and legs.	*	
Due to extreme <b>emaciation</b> , no feelings were <b>pictured</b> on	* afmagret	
their <b>emaciated</b> faces.	* afmagring	* aftegne sig
<b>20 Words can hardly paint the scene.</b>	* afmagret	
The sight <b>chilled</b> those who liberated them.	* ord kan næppe >	* beskrive
What they saw <b>chilled</b> their <b>blood</b> .	* give ng. kuldegysning	* sceneri
The sight <b>sent a chill down</b> the <b>liberators' spine</b> :	* ~ få blodet til at isne	
it <b>sent a shiver down</b> their <b>spine</b> .	* sende > * kuldegysning * ned gennem * befrier * ryg- ~ få det til at løbe koldt ned ad ryggen på ng. søjle	
It <b>struck a chill to</b> their <b>heart</b> ; it <b>made</b> their <b>blood run cold</b> .	* =	
They <b>felt a chill of</b> anxiety, apprehension and fear.	* ~ få blodet til at isne	* =
The sight <b>froze</b> their <b>blood</b> : it <b>made</b> their <b>blood freeze</b> .	* ~ få kuldegysning af ngt.	
It <b>curdled</b> their <b>blood</b> : it <b>made</b> their <b>blood curdle</b> .	* ~ få ngs. blod til at isne / stivne	* =
Many victims of <b>persecution</b> who survived in the camps	* ~ få ngs. blod til at isne / stivne	* =
<b>30</b> still <b>wasted away with</b> grief if not <b>with</b> an <b>impaired health</b> .	* forfølgelse	
Millions of surviving war victims <b>suffered a wasted</b> life	* hentæres af ( sorg )	* af > * svækket * helbred
even though some of these <b>broken creatures</b> spent the rest	* plages af >	* forspildt ( liv )
of their life in the vast <b>melting pot</b> of American society.	* nedbrudt	* skabning
<b>Broken in body and mind</b> , and therefore <b>hypersensitive to</b>	* smelte-	* ~ digel
<b>spine-chilling / -tingling</b> situations, these <b>poor creatures</b>	* nedbrudt på sjæl og legeme	* overfølsom overfor ngt.
might be mistaken as <b>spineless</b> individuals.	* ryggrads- * kølende / prikkende	* stakkels * skabning
A <b>spineless</b> animal has no <b>spinal column</b> and <b>spinal cord</b> .	~ mildt gysfremkaldende	~ stakkel
<b>Spiny</b> plants and animals have <b>spines</b> .	* uden ryggrad, ~ karaktersvag	
	* ~ uden rygsøjle / -rad	* rygsøjle / -rad
		* rygmarv
	* pigget	* pig

<b>1361</b> The areas <b>under German occupation</b> contained a great part of Europe; part of France stayed <b>unoccupied</b> .	* tysk	* besættelse	* omfatte ngt.
After the German troops had <b>bypassed / circumvented</b> the <i>Maginot line</i> , the British and French troops weren't able to <b>check</b> the <b>advance</b> of the German army on the continent.	* ikke besat	* passere forbi / udenom ngt.	
Unable to <b>contain</b> the German attacks, the Allied troops were <b>circumvented</b> and <b>contained</b> at <i>Dunkirk</i> in 1940.	*		
Many troops were rescued <b>in</b> the <b>Dunkirk evacuation</b> .	* hindre / standse >		* fremmarch
<b>Occupying</b> more than <b>half (of)</b> Europe and more than <b>half (of)</b> the countries, the Germans <b>occupied</b> the <b>half of</b> France but only <b>half of</b> it.	* ~ opfange ( angreb )		
<b>10</b> As the <b>might</b> of Germany <b>wasted</b> , the war was an <b>uphill battle</b> for the Germans.	* omringet		* holdt indesluttet
Having <b>wooded fame</b> , Hitler and the Nazis had <b>wooded</b> their own <b>destruction</b> .	* i >	* ... >	* evakuering, redningsaktion
Germany has had a <b>chequered</b> /eA <b>checkered</b> history.	* besætte >		* halvdelen af ( et område )
<b>Burdened</b> by <b>reparations</b> (pl.) after the Great War, it had <b>sunk into</b> an economic and political <b>morass / quagmire</b> .	* halvdelen af ( nogle områder )		
So Hitler succeeded in <b>whipping up / rousing</b> the <b>masses</b> .	* besætte >	* det halve af > ( et område )	* halvdelen af > ( et område )
Crowd after crowd were <b>whipped up / roused to</b> a <b>frenzy</b> .	* magt, kraft		* svinde
Hitler wanted <b>Byelorussia / Belarus ( White Russia )</b>	* opadbakke ⇔	* kamp	
<b>20</b> and Ukraine so German settlers could receive <b>grants</b> of land <b>from</b> the government.	* bejle til >		* berømmelse
The German <b>occupants</b> of the land were supposed to provide the Third Reich with <b>grain</b> .	* - - - >		* tilintetgørelse
Night after night, the noise of the <b>air-raid warning</b> , the <b>anti-aircraft defence</b> ( <b>anti-aircraft artillery</b> or <b>guns</b> ), and allied <b>bombardment</b> <b>broke the silence of</b> the <b>night</b> .	* ( ternet ), ~ broget ( historie )		
Flying over Germany, an American <b>airman</b> would say he'd pass a huge <b>spread of land</b> and a huge <b>spread of waters</b> .	* tyngtet af >		* krigsskadeerstatning
The <b>airmen</b> hoped they had <b>silenced</b> the enemy's guns.	* synke ned i >		* morads, hængedynd
<b>30</b> They were all trained in <b>doing / making</b> a <b>parachute jump</b> so in the case that a plane is <b>fatally hit</b> , the airmen tried to <b>jump from</b> the plane and hoped to <b>parachute</b> to safety.	* oppiske >		* masserne
( Some people <b>go parachuting</b> for the <b>thrill of it / for kicks</b> )	* ... ng. til >		* hysteri, vanvid
Many battles <b>ended in</b> a <b>bloodbath</b> .	* Hvide Rusland		
Much <b>blood</b> was <b>spilled</b> , and after the war the <b>victors</b> blamed the Germans and <b>Japanese</b> ( sg. = pl. ) for the war in which the <b>blood</b> of millions of people was <b>spilled</b> .	*		
	* tildeling af ngt. fra ng.		
	* besidder af ( land )		
	* korn		
	* ~ luftalarm		
	* antiluftsskyts	* luftværnsskyts	* -kanon
	* bombardement	* bryde >	* stilhed ⇔ nattens ~ nattestilheden
	* ~ flybesætningsmedlem		
	* strækning	* af land	* ... * af vand
	* <<		* bringe ngt. til tavshed & ødelægge ngt.
	* lave >	* faldskærms-	* udspring
	* alvorligt ramt		
	* springe ud ( med faldskærm )	* ~ svæve i faldskærm	
	* tage på faldskærms-udspringstur	* ~ for spændingens skyld	
	* ende i >		* blodbad
	* blod	* ( blive ) udgydt	* sejrherre
	* japaner		
	* ngs. blod		* ( blive ) udgydt

<b>1362</b> At D-Day a <b>fleet</b> of allied <b>aircrafts</b> made a large number of <b>parachute drops</b> over France.	* flåde	* luftfartøjer, fly
As the planes <b>dropped</b> their <b>parachute troops</b> , the sky was <b>teeming with parachuters</b> falling slowly to the ground.	* faldskærms- * nedkaste > * myldre med ngt.	* nedkast * tropper * faldskærmsudspringer
The fighting troops <b>laid `waste</b> ( to ) many towns.	* lægge ngt. > ~ ødelægge / udslette / tilintetgøre ngt.	* øde
<b>Bombing raids laid `waste to</b> some big cities.	* - - * ~ gennem >	* bombe- * tog
A fire <b>spread</b> rapidly <b>to adjoining</b> buildings.	* sprede sig til ngt.	* tilstødende
As the fire <b>spread</b> , and the flames <b>soared (up) into the air</b> , a <b>furious gale</b> of <b>burning hot</b> air was <b>sucked</b> through	* spredes * rasende * storm * brand varm ( luft )	* stige op i > * luften * suget + adv.
<b>10</b> the streets towards the center of the city.	*	
The fire used up all oxygen, and the temperatures <b>rose to</b> such <b>heights</b> that it was impossible to prevent the <b>spread of</b> fire.	* stige til ngt. * højder	* spredning af ( ild, brand )
<b>Fires</b> were <b>raging</b> out of control.	* ildebrand	* rase
So the strong winds <b>spread</b> the fire <b>across</b> the whole city.	* sprede ( ild )	* ud over ngt.
<b>Ravaged</b> by <b>sheets of flame</b> , and <b>soaring</b> temperatures, these cities were laid waste <b>in a holocaust</b> .	* raseret af > * altomfattende katastrofe / -brand	* ~ flammehav * stærkt stigende ( temperaturer )
Many big and historical cities were <b>razed to the ground</b> by allied <b>bombers</b> so many German big cities were almost	* raseret * bombeffy	* til grunden
<b>20</b> completely <b>obliterated</b> by allied <b>aerial bombardments</b> .	* udslette / tilintetgøre ngt.	* luft- * bombardement
A shut-down plane might <b>scythe through</b> buildings.	* pløje sig ( skære sig som en le ) gennem ngt.	
The real purpose of much of the bombardment, however, was to <b>demoralize</b> the civilians <b>in retaliation</b> and <b>revenge for the Blitz</b> , the German bombings of England in 1940.	* demoralisere ng. * blitzen	* som gengældelse > * hævn for >
<b>Unrest</b> in the <b>affected</b> English cities had then at once <b>spilled over: spilt over into</b> the rest of the country and united the British in fighting the Nazis.	* uro, røre * brede sig >	* berørt * ... til ngt.
The British were ready to <b>fight to the finish</b> .	* kæmpe til det sidste	
Politicians and officers <b>are</b> often <b>faced with</b>	* ~ stå overfor	
<b>30</b> the moral <b>dilemma of</b> choosing between two evils.	* dilemma gående ud på at -	
When can it be <b>justified spilling innocent blood</b> .	* retfærdiggøre at -	* udgyde > * uskyldigt * blod
Forest fires <b>laid waste</b> ( to ) much of the woodland(s).	* ~ ødelægge ngt.	
The fires <b>cut a `swathe through</b> the woodland(s).	* skære > ~ bane sig en vej ødelæggende gennem ngt.	* et bånd gennem ngt.
They have <b>affected</b> vast <b>swathes / swaths of</b> the woods.	* forårsaget	* ( omfattende ) skår / indhug i ngt.
Both sides of the warring parties alternately succeeded in <b>holding / keeping</b> the enemy <b>in check</b> .	* holde ( fjenden ) >	* i skak
So as the advancing troops ( were ) often <b>met with a check</b> , long and often <b>futile</b> fighting <b>wasted</b> the countries involved.	* komme ud for en forhindring / standset fremfykning * nytteløs	* udmarve ( et land )

**1363** Defeated soldiers usually **beg / plead for mercy**.

In the Russian battlefields during the **merciless** fights,  
both sides **became notorious** for **showing no mercy**.

In September the **meteorologists forecast night frost(s)**.  
so a **night-frost (E) warning** was announced for Russia.

They forecast a **freeze (A) in the night**  
so a **freeze (A) warning** was announced for the night.

There were **clear nights** with some **ground frost**.

So after a hot summer, the Russian battlegrounds  
**10** suddenly had **cold temperatures** and **slight frost**:

a **weather condition** in which the temperature  
**drops / falls below** the **freezing point** ( of water ).

As the night temperature **fell below freezing** ( **point** ) (U),  
the landscape in the morning was covered in **banks of**  
**freezing fog** and **frosty mist**.

**Frost** or **rime** – a thin layer of ice – formed on the ground  
and other surfaces.

When everything was covered with **rime** and **hoar** ( < **frost** ),  
one **frosted** landscape seemed to **melt into** another.

**20** The lakes **froze over** in November.

Even if the **frosted** soldiers hid in the **frosted** vegetation  
on the **frosted** ground, they were easy targets in the **frosty** air  
as their **exhalation(s)** formed clouds of **frosty mist**.

As the winter **grew harder** and the frost **grew more severe**,  
there were more than twenty **degrees of frost**  
so **it was hard frost**.

As the German armies **were short of supplies**,  
they suffered much **frost damage** in the **severe frost**,  
**30** especially during the **frosty** nights.

**Chilled, frozen, and shocked to the bone**, most soldiers  
**were chilled / frozen / shocked to the marrow**.

In the **sharp frost**, many german soldiers **suffered from**  
**frostbite** (U): **frostbitten** fingers and other **frostbitten**  
body parts **exposed to frostbite**.

A great many German soldiers were **frozen to death**  
by extremely **freezing temperatures** as they **froze to death**  
either on the battlefield or **in full retreat**.

\* bede om > \* barmhjertighed  
nåde  
\* nådesløs  
\* blive > \* berygtet for at - \* ~ ikke vise nogen <<  
\* meteorolog \* forudsige ngt. \* natte- \* frost  
\* & advarsel om ...  
\* frost ( -vejr ) \* om natten  
~ nattefrost  
\* frost- \* advarsel  
\* klar \* nat \* ~ frost ved jordoverfladen  
\*  
\* kold \* temperatur \* let \* frost  
\* vejr- \* tilstand, ~ situation  
\* ryge ned under > \* frysepunktet ( for ngt.)  
\* falde ned under > \* ( vands ) frysepunkt  
\* banke af >  
\* ~ frost- \* tåge \* ~ frost \* dis  
\* ( rim- ) frost \* rim ( -frost )  
\*  
\* rim \* rimfrost  
\* frostdækket \* smelte sammen med ngt.  
/ -beklædt  
\* fryse helt til  
\* << \* =  
\* <<< \* frostfyldt  
\* udånding \* ~ rimtåge  
\* ( vinteren ) strenges \* ( frosten ) ~ blive strengere  
~ blive hårdere  
\* graders \* frost  
& frostgrader  
\* det var hård frost  
\* ~ mangle > \* forsyning  
\* frost- \* ~ skader \* streng \* frost  
\* frostfyldt  
\* afkølet / frossen / chokeret \* helt ind til benet  
~ opleve kulden / chocket gå gennem marv og ben  
\* ... marven  
\* streng \* frost \* lide af >  
\* ~ forfrysning \* ~ forfrysningssamt \* =  
\* udsat for > \* ~ forfrysning  
\* blive frosset > \* ihjel  
\* ~ frost- \* temperaturer, ~ grader \* fryse ihjel  
\* på > \* fuld \* tilbagetog

<b>1364 Headed by</b> a great number of <b>tanks</b> , Soviet and Allied	* ~ ført an af >	* tank, kampvogn
<b>occupation forces</b> from either side of The Third Reich	* okkupations-	* styrker
<b>took possession of unoccupied</b> territory.	* tage > i besiddelse	* ikke besat ( territorium )
<b>At long last</b> , after Hitler had <b>committed suicide</b> ,	* langt om længe	
the German armies were forced to <b>sue for</b> peace.	* bede om ( fred )	
The war had <b>raged for</b> six years.	* rase i ( x tid )	
After the war, in the beginning of the allied <b>occupation</b>	* besættelse	
of Germany, disease and hunger <b>wasted</b> the population	* hæрге / udmarve / afmagre ng.	
of the many <b>heavily-bombed</b> cities, often <b>bombed to pieces</b> .	* voldsomt	* bombet * ~ udbombet
<b>10 The occupation forces</b> of the <b>Great Powers</b> , however,	* besættelses-	* styrke * ~ stormagt
stayed in Germany for many years.	*	
Eastern Germany had to <b>pay reparations</b> (pl.) <b>to</b> the Soviet	* betale / yde >	* krigsskadeserstatning til ng.
Union while the U.S.A <b>implemented</b> an opposite idea.	* iværksætte / virkeliggøre / gennemføre ( ide )	
<b>Implementing</b> the Marshall Plan, the U.S.A. <b>carried out</b>	* ... ( plan )	* =
the <b>European Recovery Program</b> , in Europe.	* europæisk	* genopretnings- * program
<b>Breaking new / fresh ground</b> , the plan <b>blazed a trail</b> .	* bane en ny vej	* svide > * spor
Contrary to the <b>after-effect</b> of the First World War,	* ~ være banebrydende	* ~ bane en ny vej
the U.S.A. this way hoped that Germany would never again	* eftervirkning	
be <b>inclined to wage war</b> in order to <b>repair a defeat</b> .	*	
<b>20 The implementation</b> of this <b>unconventional</b> ,	* tilbøjelig til at - * føre krig	* rette op på > * nederlag
<b>controversial</b> , <b>ground</b> / <b>pathbreaking, trailblazing</b> ,	* iværksættelse /	* usædvanlig
and <b>pioneer</b> (<ing) policy turned out very successful.	* gennemførelse af >	
<b>War memorials</b> were <b>set up</b> in many places.	* stridskabende	* banebrydende * =
<b>Monuments in memory of the victims of war</b>	* banebrydende ( politik )	
sometimes <b>show</b> a <b>roll of honour</b> E/A an <b>honor roll</b> .	* krigs-	* mindesmærke * sat op, rejst
Every year at some of the <b>monuments to the war victims</b> ,	* monument	* til minde om ng. * ofre for > * krigen
there's a two-minute <b>silence in commemoration of</b> the dead.	* ng. viser >	* æresliste
So there are all kinds of memorials and monuments,	* ... for ng.	* =
such as <b>plaques</b> , stones, columns, busts, statues,	* stilhed	* til minde om ng.
<b>30</b> and buildings to <b>commemorate</b> people or events.	*	
In some places the streets <b>are silent and deserted</b> .	* mindeplade	
when people <b>gather together</b> in <b>silent</b> groups	* mindes ng&t.	
to <b>commemorate</b> the victims of war.	* ~ ligge øde og stille hen	
After the <b>commemoration</b> , people speak in <b>muted</b> voices,	* samle sig	* tavs * mindes ng.
and walk <b>silently</b> through the streets.	* minde ng.	
	* mindehøjtidelighed	* dæmpet ( stemme )
	* tavs, stille	



A soldier, hiding in an **unoccupied** house, saved his life

by **raising** his **hands** in the **air** / **throwing up** his **hands**.

Having **surrendered voluntarily** by **spreading** his **arms**  
**over his head**, he **prayed** for mercy,

**With his hands up, he prayed for his life.**

God **grant** (subj.) that he may live.

His **prayer** was **granted** as it ought to be according to  
10 the Geneva Convention.

**Under close guard / Closely guarded,**  
the prisoners **surrendered** their weapons ( **to** the enemy ).

In the end, most German soldiers were relieved to **surrender** themselves, and their prisoners **to** the Western Allied troops instead of to the much feared *Ivan* ( slang for **the Soviets** or Russians ).

Especially armed forces on the retreat risk to be badly affected by **desertion(s)**.

Even if many German soldiers **deserted** ( the army )  
**20** as defeat became inevitable, surprisingly many German  
soldiers were determined to **fight to / until the bitter end**.

Having sworn an oath of allegiance to Hitler, " **der Führer** ", and having been brainwashed by Nazi propaganda such as having agreed to Hitler's desperate proclamation asking, ' **Wollen Sie den totalen Krieg ?** ' many German soldiers kept **fighting** if no longer for " **der endliche Sieg** " then in order to **die for** " **das Vaterland** " in an honourable defeat.

\* være mindet i ngt.

\*

\* ubeboet

\* række >

\* hænderne

\* i vejret

\* overgive sig

\* frivilligt

\* sprede armene /  
& holde armene spredt >

\* ( med hænderne )  
over hovedet

\* bede om nåde

\* med > \* hænderne oppe

\* ... for sit liv

\* give at -

\* ngs. bøn >

\* ( blive ) belønnet

\*

\* under streng bevoqtnina

\* overdrage ngt. ( til ng. )

\*

\* overgive sig / ng. ( til ng. )

\*

\* sovjetborgerne

\*

\* desertering (<er )

\* desertere ( hæren )

\*

\* kæmpe til >

\* ( den ) bitre ende

\* føreren

\*

\*

\* ønsker I den totale krig

\* kæmpe for ngt.

\* den endelige sejr

\* dØ for >

\* fædrelandet

<b>1366 Deserters</b> are generally considered with contempt,	* desertør
<b>like rats deserting / leaving a sinking ship.</b>	* som rotter, der forlader den synkende skude
So as many Germans stayed fanatical Nazis, a <b>deserting</b>	* deserterende >
or <b>deserted</b> soldier ran a high risk of being shot by their own.	* deserteret ( soldat )
At the Yalta Conference, Roosevelt, Churchill, and Stalin	*
agreed upon the <b>post-war</b> occupation of Germany by the USA,	* ~ efterkrigstidens
Soviet Union, UK and France, and that the German	*
<b>capitulation</b> had to be an <b>unconditional surrender</b> .	* kapitulation      * betingelsesløs      * overgivelse overgivelse
Germany <b>had no option but to capitulate to</b> the demands	* ikke have andet valg end at -      * give efter for ( krav )
<b>10</b> agreed upon at the Yalta Conference.	*
Having <b>capitulated / surrendered</b> , all German forces	* kapitulere, overgive sig
had to accept an immediate <b>surrender of</b> all weapons.	* overdragelse af ngt.
Germany had to <b>surrender / relinquish</b> all claims	* opgive ( krav )
to territories occupied or <b>annexed</b> before and during the war.	* annekteret
After the war, thousands of people little by little <b>gave up /</b>	* opgive >
<b>relinquished</b> all hope that missing relatives, friends,	* ... ( håb )
and acquaintances will ever return alive.	*
The occupying powers <b>set up a war crime tribunal</b>	* oprette >      * krigs-      * forbrydelse      * tribunal
( the <b>Nuremberg trials</b> ), <b>military tribunals</b> , and other <b>courts</b>	* Nürnberg      * ~ processen      * militær      * tribunal      *
<b>20</b> in order to <b>clean () up</b> Germany after the Nazi regime.	* rydde op i ( organisation )
Different <b>judicial settlements</b> were reached in	* juridisk      * afgørelse      * ( være ) nået
Western and Eastern Germany as a result of the difference	* ~ retsopgør
between the political ideologies of the so called free	*
Western Powers and the communist Soviet Union.	*
In all cases, some war criminals were sentenced to death	*
while others were sentenced to jail.	*
Many people who had actively supported the Nazis	*
were forced to <b>relinquish</b> their property <b>to</b> the authorities.	* aflevere ngt. til ng.
Owners of companies who had supported the Nazis	*
<b>30</b> were forced to <b>relinquish</b> control of their companies.	* afgive ( kontrol )

## NEARING THE ALPS

**1367** The bus has **picture windows**.

It has a **heated rear window** E/A a **rear defroster**

Otis and Sandra notice many windows and roads

that have ( been ) **iced over** during the night.

An **icy** road may be covered with dangerous **black ice**.

The **icing** on the road makes it very dangerous to drive.

**Salt spreaders spread salt** out to melt the ice.

A big lake is covered with a **sheet of ice**.

Some ships are left **ice-bound** in the **ice-bound** harbour

**10 for the rest of** the winter.

An **icebreaker** is strong enough to **break** thick **ice**,  
and **force** its **way through** heavy **ice floes**. ( a floe )

**Breaking a way through icy** waters,  
it **cuts** a **navigable passage** through the ice.

When the **sun** suddenly **breaks through**,  
the passengers in the **sunny side** are **melting with heat**.

Although the **sun shines**, it's **freezing cold** outside  
so the nearby passengers, **on the other hand**, **freeze**  
every time a door opens.

**20** It's **freezing** in there near by the open door  
as the passengers are **chilled** by a **chill draught** E/A **draft**.  
No other seats are **unoccupied**, though.

The **sun being in** the driver's **eyes**, he protects his eyes  
against the **sunbeams** with a pair of **sunglasses** or **shades**.

**Snowdrops** appear in many places.

Once in a while, though, the landscape is **blanketed in fog**.

When the landscape is covered in **a thick blanket of fog**,  
and **heavy fogs blanket** the light, the **visibility** is **poor**.

' It's a **blankety-blank** fog,' the driver **grumbles**.

**30** Now and then there is a **queue** E/A **line** of **traffic**.

A **low snowfall** shows that there has been a **light snowfall**.

As they are nearing the Alps, **snow** covers the **frozen**  
ground **in spots** where the snow has **settled**.

It **freezes** when the temperature is below **freezing ( point )**:  
0 ° C ( **zero** / E& **nought degrees Celsius** / **centigrade** )  
which is the **freezing point of** water.

When it's **frost** during the night,  
**the cold** of the cold weather **freezes** the ground.

\* ~ panoramaruder

\* opvarmet \* bag- \* rude \* bag- ( rude ) \* afiser

\*

\* overise ( blive overiset )

\* isbelagt / -glat \* sort, ~ gennemsigtig \* is  
~ isslag

\* overising

\* salt- \* spreder \* sprede \* =

\* lag af is

\* siddende fast i isen \* lukket til af is

\* i resten af ( vinteren ), & ... ud

\* isbryder

\* mase sig > \* vej \* is- \* flage

\* bryde > \* vej gennem > \* isfyldt ( farvand )

\* bryde > \* is \* skære > \* sejlbare \* passage

\* sol \* bryde igennem

\* solsiden \* ( være ved at ) smelte \* af varme

\* solen \* skinne \* is- / hundekoldt

\* derimod, til gengæld \* fryse

\*

\* ~ is- / hundekoldt

\* afkøle ng. \* kold \* trækvind

\* ( ubesat ), ~ ikke optaget

\* sol \* være i ngs. øjne  
~ ng. have solen i øjnene

\* solstråle \* solbriller

\* vintergæk

\* ( landskab ) dækket / indhyllet > \* i tåge

\* tykt > \* tæppe af > \* =

\* tunge > \* tågebanker \* indhülle / \* sigtbarhed \* ringe  
skjule ngt.

\* noksagt \* snerre, vrisse  
beklage sig, skælde ud

\* kø af > \* trafik

~ traffikkø

\* ~ tyndt lag falden sne \* let \* snefald

\* sne \* frossen

\* pletvis \* ~ blive liggende

\* det fryser \* frysepunktet

\* nul \* grad \* celsius / ~ celsius

\* frysepunkt for ngt., & ngts. ...

\* frost

\* kulden \* ~ gøre ngt. frossent

**1368 Pure water** has a **freezing point of**  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

\* ( kemisk ) rent >

\* vand

\* frysepunkt på  $x^{\circ}$

So pure water **freezes at**  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  when the temperature falls /  
drops below  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  which is the **freezing point** of water.

\* fryse til is ved  $x^{\circ}$

\* frysepunkt

Ice has a **melting point of**  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

\* smeltepunkt på  $x^{\circ}$

So ice **melts at**  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  when the temperature rises  
above  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  which is the **melting point** of ice.

\* smelte ved  $x^{\circ}$

\* smeltepunkt

In line with increasing concentration of salt, the freezing  
point of salt water (  $\text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{Na}^+ + \text{Cl}^-$  ) goes down.

\*

\*

As ice begins to **freeze out of** the salt water,

\* fryse ud af ngt.

**10** the fraction of water in the solution becomes even lower,  
and the freezing point **drops** further.

\*

\* falde

At some point, at  $-21.1^{\circ}\text{C}$ , the solution will become  
**saturated with** salt, and at that temperature, the salt begins  
to **crystallize out of** the solution, along with the ice,  
until the solution completely freezes.

\*

\* mættet med ngt.

\* udkrystallisere sig fra ngt.

\*

The frozen solution is a mixture of separate ice crystals  
and salt crystals (  $\text{NaCl} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$  ).

\*

\*

Any foreign substance added to the water will cause  
a **freezing point drop** so sugar, alcohol, or any chemical salt  
**20** will lower the freezing point and melt ice.

\*

\* frysepunktssænkning

\*

**1369** In some places, **it thaws**.

When or where the weather becomes warm enough  
to **melt** snow and ice, **it's thawing**.

When the temperature rises above **freezing point** (U),  
**it** starts to **thaw**: a **thaw** has **set in**.

When the snow **thaws** and the ice **thaws**,  
as the temperature keeps up, the snow and ice **melt**;  
the snow and ice turn back into water after being frozen.

On the road, the clean white snow **turns to** grey **slush**.  
**10 Splashes** from the **slushy** roads make all the cars dirty.

When the first **snows** of winter covers the ground,  
children are **eager to play in** the **snow**.

They make **snowmen**, and have **snowball fights**.

They **pelt** each other **with** snowballs.

**Melting snow** is most **suitable for rolling** the snow **into**  
big snowballs, as for making a snowman, or a **snow hut**.

The **inuits** built an **igloo** from bloks of hard snow.  
`iblu~

During the day, the snow may show signs of **thaw**,  
and the sun may **melt** ( ) **away** the snow.

**20** In some **sunlit** places, the snow has **melted away**.

The **frozen** soil will take a long time to **thaw out**.

The snow soon **blankets** the ground **in places**  
until a **snow blanket** covers the ground all over.

A **blanket** of **newly fallen** snow covers the landscape  
as they **near** Austria.

They had a **late frost** in November and a **snowy** January.

**Heavy snowfall** provided the Alps with **high snowfalls**.

With **nights of frost**, it may **freeze** already in September.

In the spring, **meltwater swells** the watercourses.

**30** The **melting of** the winter **snows** makes the watercourses  
**swell with meltwater**.

\* det tør, det er tøvøj

\*

\* smelte ( sne )

\* <<

\* frysepunkt

\* det tør

\* tør / -vejrl -brud >

\* sætte ind

\* ( sne ) tør

\* ( is ) tør

\* smelte

\*

\* blive til >

\* sjap

\* stænk

\* sjappet ( vej )

\* sneforekomst

\* ivrig efter at -

\* lege

\* i sneen

\* snemand

\* sneboldkamp

\* overdænge ng. med ngt.

\* smeltende \* sne \* egnet til at - \* rulle ( sne ) til >  
~ tøsne

\* snehytte / ~ -hule

\* =

\* iglo, ~ snehytte

\* tør

\* smelte ngt. bort

\* solbeskinnet

\* =

\* frossen ( jord )  
( den ) frosne

\* tør < op

\* dække ngt.

\* stedvis  
sine steder

\* snedække / -tæppe

\* =

\* nyfalden

\* nærme sig

\* sen >

\* frost

\* snefyldt

\* kraftigt

\* snefald

\* ~ tykt lag falden sne

\* nat med >

\* frost

\* blive / være frostvejrl

\* smeltevand

\* få ngt. til at svulme

\* smeltning af >

\* ~ snefald

\* svulme af >

\* =

**1370** Entering Austria, the bus stops at a **checkpoint**.

They **whip through** the customs in no time.

There are **border guards** at the **checkpoint crossing**.

Many **Austrians** consider Germany their **spiritual home**.

Surrounded by **snow-clad** mountains,

the road **hugs** the river **winding ( its way ) through**

the **snow-covered** valley.

So the bus driver is busy **hugging** the **road**.

Sudden turns make it vital to **keep a check on** your speed.

**10** Most villages **hug** the river.

During the winter, part of the river **freezes**

so the river has **frozen** in many places.

The river doubles in size during the spring **thaw**.

The river **continuously wastes** the rock of the mountain.

The mechanical and chemical **disintegration** of rock

produces **detritus / debris** as **wastage / waste**.

di`traitês `de(i)bri~ E/A dê`bri~

**Waste of erosion** forms many landscapes.

The steady **wastage of erosion** has formed the river valley.

**20** As the **wastage** is transported by the flow of the river,

the moving **waste** on the river bed **wear away** the rock.

\*

**AT THE SKI RESORT**

The ski resort **had snow** last week.

It has **snowed heavily**: it **snowed heavily for** two days.

**Snow** has **fallen heavily** in the mountains.

50 cm **of snow has / have fallen**.

Although there has been a **heavy fall of snow**,

the main roads are kept free of snow by **snowploughs** E/A

**30 snowploughs, snowblowers** and salt **spreaders**.

Up in the mountains, the traffic noise is **muted** by the snow.

The **muted** sound of slow traffic is a charm of the village.

The cars must have **snow chains** on the wheels.

They should arrive at the hotel **by noon / midday**.

\* kontrolpost

\* stryge gennem ng.

\* grænsevagt \* = \* overgang

\* østriger \* åndelige \* ~ hjemsted

\* sneklædt

\* ligge tæt ved ( flod ) \* sno sig ( vej ) gennem ng.

\* snedækket

\* holde sig på > \* vejen

\* holde kontrol / øje med ng.

\* ligge tæt ved ng.

\* fryse til

\* være frosset til

\* tøjbrud

\* konstant \* bort- / nedslide ng.

\* nedbrydning

\* nedbrydningsmateriale

\* nedslidning ⇔ \* erosions-

\* - -

\* nedslidningsmateriale

\* = \* bortslide ng.

\* skisportssted

\* få sne

\* sne \* voldsomt \* ... i ( x tid )

\* sneen \* falde / dale \* ~ tæt

\* ~ der er faldet x sne

\* voldsomt \* ~ snefald

\* sneplov

\* = \* snefræser \* spreder ( person / maskine )

\* dæmpe ng.

\* dæmpet

\* sne- \* kæde

\* ved middagstid

<b>1371</b> Ann and Al <b>check into</b> the hotel <b>at noon / midday</b> .	* tjekke ind, indskrive sig på > * hotel * om middagen
It's a hotel with a <b>restful</b> and <b>calming</b> atmosphere.	* afslappet, rolig * beroligende
In order to <b>check in</b> at the hotel, they go to <b>reception</b> E/A	* tjekke ind, indskrive sig på ngt.
the <b>reception desk</b> where the reception manager	*
<b>ticks off</b> E/A <b>checks</b> ( ) <b>off</b> ( the names of ) the guests	* tjekke / hakke ng. ( navn ) af
who have already <b>booked</b> ( a room ) / <b>made</b> a <b>reservation</b> .	* booke / bestille ( ngt. ) * ~ forudbestilt ( A & betalt )
The hotel has <b>fitted</b> ( ) <b>out</b> a suite <b>as</b> a <b>honeymoon suite</b> .	* indrette ngt. som ngt. * ~ bryllups- * suite ( række af værelser )
Carrying their <b>suitcases</b> , the porter takes them to the <b>bridal</b>	* kuffert * bryllups-
<b>suite stretching out</b> in the glaring light of the <b>midday sun</b> .	* suite * ligge udstrakt * middags- * sol
<b>10</b> The rooms of the suite <b>get the sun</b> both <b>in</b> the <b>morning</b> ,	* få sol * om > * morgen
<b>at</b> ( <b>high</b> ) <b>noon / at midday</b> , and <b>in</b> the <b>afternoon</b> .	* eftermiddag
<b>Rays, shafts</b> and <b>beams</b> of bright, midday <b>sunlight</b>	* stråle, stribe * = * = * sollys
<b>flood / stream into</b> the rooms.	* vælde ind i ngt.
<b>Feeling all in</b> , they <b>spread</b> ( themselves ) <b>out</b> /	* være helt udkørt * brede sig
<b>spreadeagle</b> and <b>sprawl</b> on the double bed	* sprede arme og ben ud til siden * brede sig med > spredte arme og ben
<b>Being done in</b> / ( <b>dead</b> ) <b>beat</b> they lie <b>sprawled</b> /	* være helt udkørt * med spredte arme og ben ~ dødtræt
<b>spreadeagled</b> E/A <eagle on the bed.	* - = -
The <b>sunlit lofty</b> suite is <b>furnished with</b> beautifully <b>finished</b>	* soloplyst * højloftet * møbleret * fuldendt
<b>pieces</b> of <b>rustic</b> furniture.	* stykker * rustik * møblement ~ rustikke møbler
<b>20</b> There's a <b>refridgerator</b> Efo /eA <b>icebox</b> (o-f) in the kitchen.	* køleskab * isskab, køleskab
The <b>fridge</b> is a <b>fridge-freezer</b> so they can have	* = * køleskab med fryser
<b>iced water</b> E/A <b>ice water</b> : water <b>chilled with</b> ice.	* isvand * afkølet med ngt.
They can make <b>iced coffee</b> and <b>iced tea</b> ,	* ~ iskaffe * -te
or have an <b>ice-cold beer</b> .	* iskold * øl
Some <b>beverages</b> are best served <b>chilled</b> .	* drikkevare * afkølet kold
In the old days they used an <b>icebox</b> to <b>chill</b> the food.	* isskab * køle ngt.
The <b>iceman</b> used an <b>ice pick</b> to break an <b>ice bar</b> into smaller pieces.	* ismand * is- * ( hakke ), ~ syl * is- * stang
The suite has the most spectacular views <b>imaginable</b> .	* tænkelig, man kan forestille sig
<b>30</b> <b>Huge icicles</b> hang from the <b>snowy / snow-clad</b> roofs.	* enorm * istap * hænge ned fra ngt. * snedækket
The distant <b>snow-clad mountain ridges</b> ,	* sneklædt * bjerg- * kam
and <b>snowy moutain tops</b> rise in a <b>blanket of cloud</b> .	* sneklædt * -top / -tinde * tæppe ⇔ * sky- ~ skydække
Mountain top is a <b>blanket term</b> for <b>summits</b> and <b>peaks</b> .	* ~ fællesbetegnelse * ( bjergs ) højeste top * lavere ...
<b>Later in the day</b> the clouds <b>melt away</b> .	* senere på / op ad dagen * ( smelte bort ) forsvinde, opløses
<b>On a clear day</b> you can see the <b>snows</b> of Zugspitze.	* & i klart vejr * snemasser
One <b>shade</b> of white <b>melts into</b> another on its <b>snowy</b> slopes.	* nuance * smelte sammen med ( nuance ) * sneklædt
Some mountains are <b>snow-capped all the year round</b> .	* ~ med sne på toppen * hele året rundt

1372 The newly weds start to **unpack**.

They listning to **The Firebird Suite** by Stravinsky,  
while they **unpack** their ( suit>) **cases**.

In order to **chill** a bottle of champagne  
they keep it **on ice** in an **ice bucket** / **ice pail**.

Ann wants to **spread** the content of her case **on** the bed,  
so she **spreads** her things **out on** the bed.

**Spreading** the content, she **spreads out** all her things.

Having **spread** her things **out** all **over** the bed,

10 she **puts** her clothes **in place** in the **wardrobe**.

Still a lot of things are **spread over** the whole suite.

The **skiers** both **go cross-country** ( **skiing** )  
and **down`hill** ( **skiing** ).

This year, **challenging** the down-hill pistes,  
Ann and Al will **try** their **strength against** the slopes.

In a **skiing shop** they rent a pair of **downhill skis**,  
**ski sticks** or **ski poles**, and a pair of downhill **ski boots**.

Their boots must **fit**.

The **bindings** must be adjusted so they **fit** ( the boots ).

20 The ski dress **suits** Ann: light green **suits** her.  
s(j)u-ts

A **scarf** gives a feminine **finish to** her ski dress.

**One-piece** ski suits are **widely worm**; they **are all** the **rage**.

Many skiers are **dressed** in **loud, glaring** or **garish** colours  
while Ann is wearing a **ski suit** in **muted shades** of rose.

Most children wear **snowsuits**.

Ann and Al have **skied** before, and both **ski** quite well  
so they don't need a **skiing instructor** to give them  
**skiing lessons** on the **nursery slope** E/A **bunny slope**.

Al **spreads (out)** a piste map **on** a table.

30 He **spreads** the map of the pistes (**out**) **over** the table.

\* pakke ud

\* Ildfuglen

\* suite

\* pakke ngt. ud

\* kuffert

\* afkøle ngt.

\* på is

\* iskølespand  
champagnekøler

\* =

\* sprede ngt. ( ud på ) ngt.

\* ... ngt. ud på ngt.

\* sprede ngt. ( ud )

\* =

\* ... over

\* lægge ngt. på plads

\* spredt over ngt.

\* skiløber

\* ~ løbe langrend

\* løbe nedadbakke / slalom

\* udfordre ngt.

\* prøve kræfter med ngt.

\* skisportsforretning

\* slalomski

\* ski-

\* stav

\* =

\* støvle

\* passe i størrelse

\* binding

\* passe ( til ngt.)

\* klæde ng.

\* =

\* tørklæde

\* anstrøg til ngt.

\* ~ ud i et \* ~ af mange \* båret \* ~ rasende populær  
enormt på mode

\* klædt i

\* skrigende

\* =

\* spraglet

\* ski-

\* dragt

\* afdæmpet

\* ~ nuance af ngt.

\* ~ flyverdragt

\* ~ stå på ski

\* skiinstruktør / -lærer

\* ski-

\* lektioner  
pl. ~ undervisning

\* på begynderbakke

\* brede / folde ngt. ud

\* piste

\* ... på ngt.



<b>1373 Ski lifts</b> takes skiers up the <b>snowy</b> mountain <b>slopes</b> .	* ski-	* lift	* snedækket	* skråning side
A lot of skiers <b>join</b> a <b>line</b> / E& a <b>queue</b> for a ski lift.	* ~ stille sig i kø til ngt.			
Some <b>line up</b> / <b>queue</b> (up) for the <b>chairlift</b> .	* ~ stille sig i kø til ngt.			* stolelift
<b>Lining up</b> / <b>queueing</b> (up), and moving forward <b>by</b> / <b>in</b>	* & stå i kø			* ved / i >
<b>fits</b> and <b>starts</b> , they <b>are</b> never long in the lift <b>line</b> / E& <b>queue</b> .	* ~ ryk	* være / stå ( længe ) i >		* ( lift ) kø
Instead of <b>placing</b> themselves in the <b>tail of</b> the <b>line</b> / <b>queue</b> ,	* stille sig >	* ( i halen af ) ~ bagest i >		* køen
some cheaters / E& cheats try to <b>jump</b> the <b>line</b> / <b>queue</b> .	* springe køen over / over i køen			
A <b>cable car</b> / <b>gondola lift</b> takes Ann and Al a long way	* tovbane / gondollift			
<b>uphill</b> to the <b>mountain wastes</b> / <b>wasteland(s)</b> .	* op ad bakke	* bjerg-		* ødemark ~ højfjeld
<b>10</b> Carrying their skis, the skiers enter the ( <b>cable</b> ) <b>cars</b> /	* gondol / kabine			
<b>cabins</b> / <b>gondolas</b> as soon as they are <b>at rest</b> .	* i hvile, holde stille			
Soon the valley and the <b>uphill</b> and <b>downhill</b> slopes	*			
<b>spread</b> ( <b>out</b> ) <b>beneath</b> Ann and Al.	* brede sig ud			* neden under
Banks of mist <b>ascend from</b> the valley.	* stige op fra ngt.			
While the gondolas and the skiers at their <b>uphill ride</b>	* op ad bakke	↔		* ~ tur
<b>ascend</b> above the pistes <b>sloping</b> steeply <b>uphill</b> and <b>downhill</b> ,	* stige op	* hælde	* op ad bakke	* ned ad bakke
the gondolas and a few passenger at their <b>downhill</b> ride	* ned ad bakke ( ~ tur )			
<b>descend</b> at the opposite side of the huge masts.	* bevæge sig ned			
They have built <b>snow fences</b> to <b>check drifting</b> snow,	* snehegn	* standse / tilbageholde ngt.		* flygende ( sne )
and <b>snow barriers</b> to check <b>avalanches</b> .	* sne-	* barriere		* lavine skred
<b>20</b> Still villages are being destroyed in <b>avalanches</b> :	* af ...			
<b>snowslides</b> / E& <b>landslips</b> or <b>landslides</b> / E& <b>landslips</b> .	* større ...	* mindre snesked		* ... jord- / sten-
Houses are <b>buried under</b> several feet of snow.	* blive begravet under ngt.			
The <b>occupants</b> are <b>buried alive</b> when the houses collapse.	* beboer			* begrave levende
Much of the ski resort lies in the <b>wastes</b> of the mountains.	* ødemark (pl.)			
The white <b>snows</b> of the ski resort <b>spread</b> for kilometres.	* snemasser			* brede sig ud
The resort <b>spreads out</b> all the way <b>from</b> the <b>wasteland(s)</b>	* udbrede / strække sig fra ngt.			* ødemark
of the <b>high mountain(s)</b> to the <b>bottom</b> of the valley.	* ~ højfjeld			* bund ( af dal )
The pistes are <b>spread out over</b> the whole valley.	* sprede ngt. ud over ngt.			
<b>Spreading</b> all <b>over</b> the valley, the pistes <b>spill down</b>	* brede sig, ligge spredt			* brede sig
<b>30</b> the <b>mountainsides</b> in all directions.	* bjergside / -skråning			
So the resort, with a variety of <b>ski tracks</b> and <b>ski slopes</b>	* ski-	* spor, bane	* ski-	* bakke
such as <b>ski runs</b> and pistes, <b>occupies</b> a wide area.	* løjpe			* optage / fylde ngt.
In the highly situated <b>snowfields</b> above the <b>snowline</b> ,	* ~ vidde med evig sne			* snegrænse
the <b>perpetual snow</b> never melts completely, so you can	* evig			* sne
go skiing <b>during</b> the <b>whole year</b> / <b>all</b> ( the ) <b>year round</b> .	* hele året ( rundt )			

1374 The pistes **spill down** the **slopes**.

The **gentle pistes** must **slope** gently **down**

while the **steep pistes** must **slope** steeply **down**.

So some pistes are **laid out** on **gentle slopes**,  
so that they **incline** gently **towards** the valley.

Other pistes are laid out on **steep slopes**  
so that they **incline** steeply **towards** the valley.

There are **arrows** showing **where** the pistes **lead to** / **go**.

The arrows that show **which way** the pistes **lead** / **go**

**10 are inclined** either **towards** the top or towards the valley.

Skiers should observe the **blanket rules** for skiing.

Ann and Al don't like it when a piste **hugs** a **precipice**,  
and a **precipitous slope** of a **precipitous cliff drops sharply** /  
pri'sipitès  
**precipitously away** from the piste **down** to the vally.

They choose a piste to **suit** their particular needs and skills.

' If you choose a piste not too difficult, it **suits** me **fine** –  
it'll **suit** me **very well**, ' Al admits.

**As the first to go**, Ann **skis** down the slope,  
and her **better half follows suit**.

**20** When they **ski down** the pistes, they **check** the **speed**,  
and stop by making turns as in slalom, or by **snowploughing**.

**Spreading** their **legs**, beginners often ski **with** their **legs**  
**spread** when they should ski **with** their **feet close together**.

When some skiers go skiing, and some **snowboarders**  
**go snowboarding**, they ski and **snowboard off piste**.

Ann and Al both wear a **quilted** ski **suit**,  
warm enough for **laying back on** the **snow** and **have** a **rest**.

**Taking** a **rest** in the **warmth** of the **radiant** midday **sun**,  
they **lie down on** the **snow**.

**30 Lying on** the **snow**, using his **backpack** /&E **rucksack**  
as a **pillow**, Al **rests** his **head on** the small backpack.

Ann lies beside him, her head **pillowing on** his arm.

**Wearing sunglasses** to **rest** their eyes,  
they **lie relaxed** in the **brilliant** spring **sunshine**,  
and enjoy the warmth of the **noonday sun**.

Suddenly Ann gets up, makes a **snowball** and **snowballs** Al. \* snebold \* kaste ... efter ng.

They start to **snowball**, and have a **snowball fight**. \* kaste med ... \* sneboldkamp

\* brede sig nedad ngt. \* bakke

skråning

\* ~ svagt skrånende > \* piste \* hælde / skråne nedad

\* stejl \* = \* =

\* ( an-) lagt + prep. \* svag \* skråning

\* hælde / skråne ( svagt ) mod ngt.

\* stejl \* <<

\* < ( stejlt ) < mod ngt.

\* pil ( -skilt ) \* hvor ( en vej ) fører / går hen

\* hvilken vej ( en vej ) fører / går

\* hælde ngt. mod ngt.

\* ~ alment gældende \* regel

\* ligge tæt op ad ngt. \* stejl bjerg / klippe skråning

\* stejl \* skråning \* = ( klippe ) \* falde / hælde \* brat

\* stejlt \* væk ( fra ngt.) \* ned ( mod ngt.)

\* passe til ngt.

\* passe én fint

\* ... helt ...

\* som den, der starter \* stå / løbe  
( på ski )

\* bedre halvdel, ~ ægtefælle \* ~ følge trop

\* stå ( på ski ) ned ad ngt. \* kontrollere / \* farten  
bremse >

\* ~ pløje med skiene

\* sprede > \* benene \* med > \* ben ⇔

\* spredte \* med > \* ~ samlede fødder

\* snowboarder

\* tage ud at ... \* stå på snowboard \* udenfor pisterne

\* quiltet \* dragt

\* lægge sig tilbage \* ~ i sneen \* ~ få sig et hvil

\* tage sig et hvil \* varme \* strålende \* ( middags-) sol

\* lægge sig \* ~ i sneen

\* ligge \* ~ i sneen \* rygsæk

\* hovedpude \* hvile > \* hoved \* på ngt.

\* ~ bruge ngt. som hovedpude

\* bære \* solbriller \* ~ give ( øjne ) hvile

\* ligge > \* afslappet \* strålende \* ( forårs-) solskin

\* middags- \* sol

Suddenly Ann gets up, makes a **snowball** and **snowballs** Al. \* snebold \* kaste ... efter ng.

They start to **snowball**, and have a **snowball fight**. \* kaste med ... \* sneboldkamp

**1375** They have a **midday meal** at a **mountain** restaurant.

Cold wind and icy slopes **don't suit** them.

If the skis come out of control, for instance **cross over**,  
a skier may **lose** his **balance**.

**Tumbling over**, a skier may be lucky to **tumble into**  
deep snow so his **fall** is **cushioned** by the soft snow.

The branches of a trees may **act as a check on** a skier's  
**precipitate, headlong** fall.

pri `sipitët

Al imagines **precipitating himself** down a **black piste**.  
pri `sipiteiting

**10** The **smile freezes on** his **lips** as he looks down the piste.

**Freezing with terror**, he **freezes in** his **tracks** as he  
realizes that the slope has an **inclination of** about  $45^{\circ}$ .

A **slope of** about  $45^{\circ}$  is a **precipitous slope** for skiing.

The **angle of inclination** is about  $45^{\circ}$ .

One evening Al suddenly catches sight of an **owl** as it  
aul  
**spreads** its **wings** to **swoop down** immediately afterwards.

Having **swooped down on** its pray and caught it  
with its **pointed talons**, it **finishes** () **off** its pray with its  
short curved **beak / bill**.

**20** It's wings had a **spread** of nearly a metre.

The **eagle owl** has a wider **wing span**  
than the **long-eared owl**.

Unlike these owls, the **snowy owl** is white, **arctic**,  
and **diurnal**.

- \* middags-      \* måltid      \* bjerg- ( restaurant )
- \* ikke passe / være rart for ( norm. neg.)
- \* krydse ( over ) ( hinanden )
- \* miste >      & få overbalance      \* balancen
- \* tumble / vælte omkuld      \* ... ( ind ) i ng.
- \* fald      \* afbøde <
- \* virke som afbødning på
- \* hovedkulds      \* =
- \* styrt sig      \* sort      \* piste  
( en af de sværeste pister )
- \* smil      \* fryse      \* på ngs. læber  
~ ngs. smil stivner
- \* ( blive ) stiv af skræk      \* være naglet til stedet
- \* hældning på x
- \* hældning på x      \* meget stejl      \* & skråning til at -
- \* vinkel      ⇔      \* hældnings-
- \* ugle
- \* sprede >      \* vingerne      \* slå ned
- \* - - - på ng.
- \* spids      \* ( fugle- ) klo, klør      \* gøre det af med ng.
- \* næb
- \* udstrækning
- \* ørne-      \* ugle      \* vinge-      \* fang  
~ stor hornugle
- \* langøret      \* ugle
- \* sne-      \* ugle      ~ lille hornugle  
\* arktisk
- \* dagaktiv

**1376** Every day a **chambermaid** **changes** the **sheets**,  
and **makes** the **bed**.

**Changing** the **bed**, she **changes** the **bedlinen**.  
`bedlinin

She puts the **dirty laundry** in a **laundry basket**,  
and takes it to the **laundry room** where it's **laundered**.

The hotel **has laundry service**.

Arranging the **bedclothes** / **bedcovers**, the chambermaid  
**puts freshly laundered snow-white linen** **on** the **bed**.

Changing the **pillowcases** / **pillowslips**,

**10** the maid **puts clean pillowcases** / **<slips on the pillows**,  
and **puts clean sheets on** the **bed** every day.

A sheet covers each **mattress** of the double bed

The guests have a sheet with either a **blanket** or a **quilt** /  
E& a **duvet** / a **continental quilt** on top to sleep underneath.  
`du-vei

Finally the bed is covered with a **bedspread** ( **A& spread** ) /  
a **bedcover** E/A **comforter** / o-f **coverlet** or **counterpane**  
which may be another blanket or **quilt**.

**Spreading** the bedspread ( **on** the bed ),  
the maid **spreads** it **out on** / **over** the whole double bed.

**20** The sheets are **as clean as** the **driven `snow**.

Every night they enjoy the **snow** of fresh linen  
as they **slide between fresh sheets**  
and **lay back against** the **pillows**.

Often they don't **take** the **trouble to** remove the bedspread.

Having a **pillow talk**, they talk about **sundry** matters:  
anything **under the `sun**.

Having had breakfast in bed, they throw back **the covers**,  
**hop** / **leap out of** bed, and quickly get dressed.

At home they have different **bedding** (U).

**30** They have a double mattress, and use **stretch sheets**  
**down quilts** / E& **duvets** and **quilted eiderdowns** covered in  
**bedclothes** / E& **bedcovers** such as **quilt** / E& **duvet covers**.

**Clean laundry** – **linens**, **bedlinen** and **table linen** –  
are folded up, and stacked in a **linen cupboard** E/A **closet**.

\* stuepige      \* skifte >      \* lagner, ~ sengetøj  
\* ~ rede >      \* seng  
\* skifte >      \* sengetøj      \* skifte >      \* sengelinned / -sengetøj  
\* beskidt      \* vasketøj      \* ...s-      \* kurv  
& snavsetøj  
\* ~ vaske      \* rum      \* vaske, tørre ( og stryge ) ngt.  
& vaskeri  
\* have      \* vasketøj      \* service  
~ tilbyder tøjvask  
\* sengetøj  
\* lægge >      \* ny-      \* vasket      \* snehvidt      \* på sengen  
( linned )  
\* hovedpudebetræk  
\* lægge >      \* rene      \* =      \* på hovedpuderne  
\* lægge >      \* rene      \* lagner      \* på sengen  
\* madras  
\* ( uld- ) tæppe      \* vattæppe / E& ( quiltet ) dyne  
\* ( dun- ) dyne  
\* sengetæppe  
\* =  
\* vat- / sengetæppe  
\* brede ngt. ud      \* ... på ngt.  
\* ... på ngt.  
\* så rene som >      \* ~ nyfalden      \* sne  
\* ~ ren hvidhed  
\* glide ned mellem >      \* friske lagner  
\* lægge sig tilbage mod >      \* hovedpude  
\* ~ ulejlige sig med at -  
\* ~ forelsket snak i sengen      \* forskellige  
\* ~ mellem himmel og jord  
\* ~ sengetøjet, man har over sig  
\* hoppe / springe ud af ( sengen )  
\* sengeudstyr  
\* stræklagen  
\* dun-      \* dyne      \* kviltet      \* ( eder-) dunsdyne  
\* sengetøj      \* dyne-      \* betræk  
\* rent vasketøj      \* hvidevarer      \* sengetøj      \* dækketøj  
\* linneds-      \* skab

1377 They want some postcards of the <b>picturesque</b> village, and the <b>lofty</b> mountains.	* pittoresk, malerisk * høj	
They send some <b>picture postcards</b> of the <b>picturesque</b> hotel and the <b>picture-postcard settings</b> .	* billedpostkort * postkortagtig	* = * omgivelser sceneri
A <b>card</b> shows the village <b>picturesquely situated</b> on a <b>mountainside</b> .	* kort * på en bjersside / -skråning	* malerisk * beliggende
Ann's handwriting <b>slopes backwards</b> .	* hælde >	* bagud
One day a <b>toboggan spills</b> its passengers <b>into a snowdrift</b> . tê`bâgên	* kælke * fald	* vælte ngt. af i ngt. * snedrive
They all laugh as a snowdrift <b>cushions</b> their <b>spill</b> / fall, and no one is harmed <b>in the spill</b> .	* afbøde >	* fald
10 Here and there the wind has <b>laid</b> ( ) <b>bare</b> some rock , in <b>places</b> covered in / with <b>cushions</b> of <b>moss</b> .	* blotlægge ngt. * sine steder, stedvis	* pude af > * mos
One day a skier <b>takes</b> a nasty <b>tumble</b> .	* komme uf for >	* ( grimt ) fald
Having <b>tumbled forwards</b> , he hits a piece of rock.	* falde / vælte >	* forover
An eyewitness <b>sends for help</b> from the <b>rescue station</b> .	* sende bud efter > * hjælp fra ng.	* rednings- * station
The driver of the <b>rescue party checks</b> the <b>snowmobile</b> at the edge of the cliff.	* redningshold * * * komme ng. til >	* bremse / standse > * snescooter * redning / hjælp * redningsmand
<b>Coming to</b> a skier's <b>rescue</b> , the <b>rescuers</b> sometimes wear <b>snowshoes</b> , and sometimes uses an <b>ice axe</b> /A& ax.	* snesko * strømme	* isøkse * lær
Blood <b>gushes from</b> a wound in the <b>thigh</b> of the skier,	* bjerg- * sår	* rednings- * lægge >
20 so the <b>mountain rescue team apply pressure to</b> the <b>wound</b> by <b>putting a compress onto</b> the <b>wound</b> in order to <b>check</b> the <b>gush</b> of blood.	* standse > * tilskadekommet, såret * indlagt på >	* lægge pres på > * kompres * på > * strøm af ngt. * på hospital * vaske / rense >
The <b>injured</b> skier is <b>taken to hospital</b> .	* sår * rense ( sår ) * ( operations- ) ~ hospitals- * sprit	
As soon as he is <b>admitted to</b> the <b>hospital</b> , a nurse <b>washes</b> the <b>wounds</b> , and <b>cleans</b> them with <b>surgical`spirit</b> .	* methylblandet spiritus * ethylalkohol * denatureret / alkohol ( kogesprit ) * methylalkohol	
<b>Methylated spirit(s)</b> is <b>ethyl alcohol denatured</b> with <b>methyl alcohol</b> for the purpose of preventing its use as an alcoholic <b>beverage</b> .	* drikkevare * ~ alvorligt, faretruende	
<b>Critically</b> injured, the patient is in intensive care.	* lårben	
30 (The two pieces of) the broken <b>thigh bone / femur</b> must be <b>joined together</b> by a metal <b>plate</b> .	* sammenføje ngt.	* plade
<b>Dressing</b> the wounds, the nurses <b>bathe</b> the wounds, and cover them with a fresh <b>dressing</b> .	* ordne > * forbinding	* sår * bade > * sår
She takes care not to <b>bandage</b> the wound too tightly.	* forbinde ngt.	
His leg all <b>bandaged up</b> and completely <b>swathed in plaster</b> and <b>bandages</b> , the patient is unable to <b>wash</b> ( <b>himself</b> ) so a nurse <b>washes</b> him <b>completely</b> .	* svøbt / indhyllet ngt. i ngt. * bandage * vaske ng. >	* svøbt i > * gips * vaske sig * over det hele

1378 One day, Ann and Al want to **see ski jumping**.

At a **`ski-jumping contest**, they watch the **ski jumpers**  
**skiing down** the **`ski jump**, and **jump into** the air.

They **jump** a long distance: about 60 metres.

The ski jump is an artificial snow-covered **slope / slide**  
that first has a steep **incline** downwards, and then in the end  
a **slight incline** upwards that enables the skiers to jump off,  
and see how far they can **glide** and **travel** through the air  
until they land on a slope **at** the **foot** of the ski jump.

10 Last year, the champion **mauled** his **competitors**.

Most **competitors** fear a **mauling** from last year's winner.

Last year's winner **finishes second** ( pred. adj.), though.

This year's winner doesn't **waste** (A) his competitors.

At a **downhill race**, a **downhiller finishes** his first race  
two **hundredths** of a second **outside** the local record.

A **banner** between two **poles** marks the **finishing line** E/A  
**finishing line at the foot of** the **slope**.

**Finishing first** in his second race, the winner **finishes**  
a / one hundredth of a second **inside** the record.

20 He **shaves** two tenths of a second **off** his best time.

Every year he **shaved** some **fractions of** a second **off**.

He has **shaved** some fractions **off** every year.

Always high **in** the **list of results**, the best skiers  
**take** the top **placings**.

Others **finish crestfallen** a lot **down** the **list** of results.

Preferring **cross-country ski racing**, **cross-country skiers**  
compete in **cross-country ski race**.

Only a handful of skiers **are in at** the **finish**.

**Finishing first**, the favourite wins in the end

30 but it is a **close / tight finish** as **predicted**.

It's a dramatic **finish to** the race.

Number two and three **cross** the **finish line** together.

The **placing** has to be **settled by** a **photo finish recording**.

The **finishers** all get a diploma.

There are a couple of **stadiums / stadia** in the nearby town.

In winter sports, Ann has a **preference / predilection for**  
**`ice hockey**.

\* se / overvære ngt. \* skihop

\* skihop- \* konkurrence \* skihopper

\* ~ stå ned ad > \* skihopbakke \* hoppe op i > \* luften

\* hoppe x

\* skråning \* sliske, glidebane

\* hældning ( nedad )

\* let / ringe > \* hældning ( opad )

\* glide, svæve \* rejse ~ komme frem

\* ved foden af ( skihop )

\* maltraktere > \* konkurrent

\* ~ knusense besejre ng.

\* konkurrencedeltager

\* maltraktering  
~ knusende nederlag

\* slutte ( som ) >

\* anden, ~ nummer to

\* vinde stort over ng.

\* styrtløb \* styrtløber \* afslutte ngt. + pred

\* hundrededele \* over ( rekord )

\* banner \* stang \* målstreg

\* = \* ved foden af bakken

\* slutte > \* på førstepladsen \* slutte > ( m. pred.)

\* under ( rekorden )

\* barbære ngt. af ngt.

\* ... ngt. af ngt.

\* brøkdel af ngt.

\* =

\* på > \* liste ⇔ \* resultat-

\* tage > \* ( top ) placering

\* slutte \* ~ slukøret \* nede af > \* liste  
( m. pred. adj.)

\* langrendløb \* ~langrends- \* skiløber

\* ~ langrendsløb

\* være med > \* i opløbet

\* ~ komme først i mål

\* tæt \* afslutning / opløb \* forudsagt

\* afslutning på ngt.

\* krydse > \* målstreg

\* placering \* afgjort ved > \* foto ⇔ \* mål- \* optagelse

\* person, der gennemfører

\* stadion

\* forkærlighed / sær forkærlighed for ngt.

\* ishockey

1379 They want to <b>go to see / watch</b> some ice hockey.	* gå hen for at / og >	* se >	* ishockey
As they want to <b>go and (E) see / watch</b> some ice hockey,	* gå hen og se ngt.		
they decide to <b>go seeing / watching</b> an <b>ice-hockey match</b> .	* =		* kamp
There are no matches on Mondays which is a <b>rest day</b> ,	* hviledag		
but the <b>tournament resumes on</b> Tuesday.	* turnering	* gå i gang igen på ( tirsdag ) / om ( tirsdagen )	
<b>Going seeing / watching</b> hockey,	* =		
British people say they go and see an <b>ice-hockey match (E)</b>	* ishockeykamp		
while Americans say they go to see a <b>game of hockey (A)</b> .	* ~ =		
When British people say they <b>go to a hockey match (E)</b> ,	* gå til >		* hockeykamp
10 the Americans say they go to a <b>game of field hockey (A)</b> .	* ~ markhockeykamp		
Skating around on <b>the ice</b> , the ( hockey ) players use	* isen		
their ( hockey ) <b>sticks</b> to play with a <b>puck</b> : a hard <b>rubber disc</b> .	* stav	* puck	* gummi
			* skive
One team – <b>promoted from</b> the Third Division last year –	* rykke op fra ngt.		
hope for <b>promotion: promotion to</b> the First Division.	* oprykning		* ... til ngt.
They hope to be <b>promoted: promoted to</b> the First Division.	* blive rykket op ( rykke op )		* ... til ngt.
It will be the <b>high`noon of</b> the player's career.	* højdepunkt af ngt.		
The other team is threatened with <b>relegation</b>	* nedrykning		
( <b>to</b> the Third Division ).	* fra ngt.		* til ngt.
They fear to <b>be relegated ( to</b> the Third Division ).	* blive rykket ned ( rykke ned )		* ... til ngt.
20 The <b>coach</b> fears to <b>be relegated to</b> an inferior position.	* træner	* forvise / henvise / degradere ng. til ngt.	
He fears <b>relegation ( to</b> the role of assistant ).	* degradering ( til ngt. )		
He fears <b>demotion ( from</b> coach <b>to</b> assistant coach )	* degradering ( fra ngt. til ngt. )		
He fears to be <b>demoted from</b> coach <b>to</b> assistant coach,	* ( blive ) degraderet fra ngt. til		
and be <b>relegated to</b> the background.	* forvise / henvise ng. til ngt.		
<b>Limbering up / warming up</b> on the ice, the players are	* varme op		
waiting for the <b>refere's whistle</b> .	* =	* dommer	* fløjte
<b>Keeping a clean sheet</b> in the first period, the local	* ~ holde målet rent		
ice-hockey team build up a <b>safe cushion of</b> three <b>goals</b> .	* ~ stødpude / sikkerhedsmarginen på ngt.		* mål
In the second period the <b>visiting team</b> makes a few	* udehold		
30 <b>spirited</b> attacks.	* energisk / kraftfuldt / modigt ( angreb )		
Every time a team <b>spiritedly</b> attacks and gets a goal,	* =		
the <b>supporters E/A fans</b> are <b>jumping for joy</b> .	* tilhænger	* hoppe	* af glæde
The <b>home team</b> wins: it wins its <b>home game /eE match</b> .	* hjemmehold		* -kamp
The <b>home crowd jump</b> up and down <b>with excitement</b> .	* hjemme-	* ~ publikum	* hoppe
A `spiritual, a <b>Negro`spiritual</b> , is their <b>battle song</b> .	* =	( op og ned )	* i begejstring
The home team don't intend to <b>rest / sit on</b> their `laurels.		* slag-	* sang
A team usually has more <b>spectator support</b>	* hvile på >		* sine laurbær
in its <b>home games</b> than in its <b>away games</b> .	* publikums-		* opbakning
	* hjemmekamp		* udekamp

**1380** The home team managed to **put up a spirited defence** in the final period so although the visiting team attacked with **tremendous spirit**, they **lost** ( their **away game** / **the match** ).

A defeat may be a **dispiriting** experience.  
di' spiring

Many teams **stand up to** a defeat in the **wrong spirit**.

**Graceless in defeat**, they look totally **dispirited**.

Instead of refusing to **admit** their **defeat**, they should learn to **accept defeat with** (a) **good grace**, and **relegate** it to the **back of** their **mind**.

**10 Gracious in defeat**, the visiting team **approach** the **situation in** the **right spirit**, and show **team` spirit**.

Nevertheless, the **matter cannot rest there**.

**It's a matter of utmost importance** so the management cannot **let** the **case rest there**.

The management study the case **with utmost care**.

The **fault rests with** the coach: the main **criterion for** a coach's success is the number of won matches.

The **responsibility rests with** the coach as **it rests with** him **to** inspire the team and justify his actions.

**20** The coach **rests** his arguments **on lack of fighting spirit**.

As his whole argument may **rest on** a false **assumption**, the **final responsibility rests with** the management.

There are various **criteria** ( used ) **for** firing a **coach**.

The final decision **rests with** the management.

The coach must **admit defeat** and let someone else try.

**It rests with** the management **to decide on** a new coach.

The management decides to **rest** the **issue on a period of probation** for the **spirited** assistant coach.

**There** the **matter rests** as the assistant coach

**30** takes over the **coaching for the rest of** the season.

**All** the players' **hopes** now **rest on** the new coach.

**God rest** him: **God rest** his **soul**.

The new coach may **rest assured that** the players will do their utmost; he **rests assured** they will do their utmost to win.

While the new coach **looks to** his **laurels**, the demoted / relegated coach decides to **rests** his **case** even if the **thought of countermeasures** is **at / in the back of** his **mind**.

\* anstille > \* energisk / kraftfuldt / modigt \* forsvar  
\*  
\* vældig > \* energi / kampgejst \* tabe ( udekamp )  
\* nedslående ( oplevelse )  
\* ~ klare ngt. \* i den forkerte ånd  
\* taktløs \* i nederlag ( -ets stund ) \* nedslået  
ukultiveret  
\* indrømme > \* nederlag  
\* acceptere > \* = \* med ynde  
~ ( en ) god mine  
\* forvise ngt. til ngt.  
\* yndefuld \* i nederlag ( -ets stund ) \* ~ tackle >  
~ kultiveret  
\* situationen \* i den rette ånd \* holdånd  
\* sagen kan ikke have sit forblivende  
/ ikke bero derved  
\* det er en sag af > \* yderste \* vigtighed  
allerstørste  
\* lade sagen > \* ligge ( der )  
\* med yderste omhyggelighed  
\* fejlen ligge hos ng. \* ( hoved- ) kriteriet på ngt.  
\*  
\* ansvar > \* ligge hos ng.  
\* det påhviler ng. at -  
\* basere ngt. på ngt. \* mangel på ngt. \* kamp- \* ånd  
gejst  
\* hvile / bero på > \* antagelse  
\* endelige \* ansvar \* påhvile / ligge hos ng.  
& ansvaret i sidste ende  
\* kriterier ( brugt ) for at - \* træner  
\* endelig afgørelse \* ~ ligge hos ng.  
/ beslutning  
\* & erkende nederlag ( og give op )  
\* det påhviler ng. at - \* bestemme sig for ngt.  
\* ~ lade > \* sagen \* komme an på ngt. \* periode  
/ spørgsmålet tid  
\* prøve ( = prøveperiode / -tid ) \* energisk, dristig  
\* der ligger ⇔ \* sagen  
\* træning \* for / i resten af ( sæsonen ) / ( ... ) ud  
\* alle ngs. håb \* ~ knytte sig til ng.  
\* gud være ng. / ngs. sjæl nådig ( ønskemåde )  
\* ~ være forvisset om at -  
\* =  
\* passe på > \* ( sine ) laurbær  
~ vogte over sin position  
\* ~ lade sagen ligge \* tanken >  
\* ( om ) modtræk \* ( ~ lurer ) i baghovedet



**1381** One day in the **high mountains**, having enjoyed the **mountain sun**, Ann and Al notice a **bank** of **livid** clouds suddenly beginning to **darken** the sky.

Once in a while the sun **bursts through** the clouds,  
but as clouds keep **gathering** and **envelope** the mountaintops,  
a storm seems **brewing (up)**.

The **prospect of a snowstorm chills** both Ann and Al.

They **are chilled at** the **alarming / daunting prospect of**  
( being **trapped in** ) a **raging blizzard.**

**10** At first the **snowflakes** fall quietly, then **whirlingly**.

As the **howling blizzard** takes the skiers **by surprise**,  
the skiers are **in a hurry**.

**Headwind** acts as a **check** upon their **pace**.

**Sweeping** the snow-clad mountains,

and **sweeping across** the snowy ground / the snowfields,

**blasts** of wind stir up the newly fallen snow.

Once in a while a **spinning / whirling** gust of wind

**whirls** the **loose** snow **up** in the air, and **envelops** Ann and Al  
in a cloud of snowflakes **spinning** / **whirling** around them.

**20** Soon the blizzard has **obliterated** all tracks.

When **there is a blizzard**, even if they wear **ski goggles**, they can hardly find the **downhill** piste and **downhill** ski lift.

**Searchers** check the pistes to guide **stray** skiers.

The searchers **spread out** to cover the area faster.

Passing a **ramshackle** / **tumbledown** cottage,

Ann and Al **take** a **short`cut** across a **flimsy / rickety** bridge.  
& `... ..

They are too busy reaching home to **worry about**

the **flimsiness** of the bridge.

Struggling ( their way ) home really **finishes** them ( **off** ).

**30** Their faces are **ice-cold**.

Their hands, **livid with** cold, are **as cold as ice**

when they eventually reach their hotel down in the valley.

Having **discarded** their jackets, they have a **stiff** drink.

Al has a **Scotch on the rocks**: a drink of **Scotch** ( whisky )

with **ice** – only with **pieces of ice**.

The **lumps of ice** are often **ice cubes**.

Having a bath, Ann discovers a **livid mark** on her body.

Hurrying home has cost her a **livid bruise**.

**1382** Having **collected themselves**, they borrow

\* samle sig sammen, ~ sunde sig

a **pack** E/A **deck of cards**, and have a **game of cards**.

\* ( pakke ), ~ spil af > \* kort \* spil med > \* kort  
~ kortspil ~ kortspil

The cards were badly **mauled** by previous borrowers.

\* ( blive ) maltrakteret

` **Playing cards** consist of four **suits**, each set called a **suit**.  
s(j)u-t

\* spille- \* kort \* serie \* kortfarve

The red **suits** are called **hearts** and **diamonds**,

\* = \* hjerte \* ruder

and the black suits are called **spades** and **clubs**.

\* spar \* klør

A player **follows suit** or, if he's **void of a suit**, **discards**.

\* bekende kulør \* indholdsløs for / \* kulør \* kaste af  
helt uden > ~ renonce )

As he **discards** an unwanted **card**, that particular **discard**

\* smide > \* kort \* afkast

may **decide** the **game**.

~ kaste ( et kort ) af ~ afkastet kort  
\* afgøre > \* spillet

**10** As one **tippie** calls for another, they spend the **rest of**

\* alkoholisk drink \* invitere til en til \* resten af

the day **tippling**: **tippling** all kinds of alcoholic beverages.

\* ( små-) pimpe \* ... ngt.

Ann's favourite **tippie** is rum and Coke ( Coca-Cola / cola ).

\* alkoholisk drink

( A **tippier** may be **on the slippery slope** to alcoholism. )

\* småpimper \* på vej ned ad skråplanet ( til ngt.)

In the morning Ann asks for an **ice bag / pack**

\* ispose

to cool her **aching** head.

\* smertende

Having **raged** outside all night, the blizzard has **raged out**.

\* rase \* & stilne af

In the morning the whole town is **snowed up**.

\* sneet til

As the houses are **snowed up** and **snowbound**,

\* = \* tilsneet

and the roads are **snowed up** and **snowbound**,

\* = \* lukket af sne

**20** everybody is **snowed in** and **snowbound** in the morning.

\* sneet inde \* sneet inde

Only the **snow-clearing** vehicles are not **snowbound**.

\* snerydnings- ( køretøj ) \* ~ passiveret af sne

Many roads are soon **cleared of** snow,

\* ryddet for ngt.

and the **newly fallen** snow is **cleared from** the **paths**.

\* ~ nyfalden \* ... fra ngt. \* sti

If Al had to **show** his **hand / cards** E/A **tip** his **hand**, much

\* ~ bekende kulør

of what happened last night is **obliterated by** the **intoxication**.

\* ( være ) udvisket / -slettet af ngt. \* beruselse

Ann **follows suit** and admits that what happened

\* ~ komme ud af busken

late in the night is **obliterated from** her **memory**.

\* ( være ) udvisket / -slettet fra > \* hukommelsen

Going to bed **with the sun** and getting up **with the sun**,

\* ( gå i seng ) med solen \* ( stå op ) - - -

they wake up in a **pool of sunlight**.

\* ~ væld \* sollys

**30** When the **sun sets** and the **sun rises**, the snow is shining

\* solen går ned \* ... står op

in the reflected **rays** of the **setting** or **rising sun**.

\* stråle \* nedgående \* opgående

**At sunset** (U) or **sundown** (eA) and **at sunrise**, **dawn**

\* ved solnedgang ( -tid ) \* ved solopgang

or **sun-up**, they admire the pinks and yellows of the **sunset**

\* = \*

and **sunrise**.

\* = \*

One night **it's sharp frost**: It's a **clear and frosty** night.

\* det er hård frost \* ~ frostklar

There are twenty **degrees of frost**: twenty degrees

\* x frostgrader, ~ x graders frost

below the **freezing point**.

\* fryse- \* punkt

<b>1383</b> In the morning, they realize there is <b>ice</b> on the windows.	* is	
During the <b>frosty night</b> the windows have <b>frosted over / up</b> .	* frostnat	* blive overiset
The <b>frosty weather</b> has <b>frosted</b> the windows <b>over / up</b> .	* frostvejr	* overise ng.
Some <b>frosted</b> windows are covered with <b>frost</b> while some	* ~ tiliset	* frost
<b>frosted</b> windows are just provided with <b>frosted</b> glass.	* ~ matteret	tyndt islag * =
So many windows have <b>iced `over / up</b> during the <b>icy</b> night.	* ( blive ) overiset	* iskold ( nat )
The <b>icy</b> weather has <b>iced</b> ( ) <b>over</b> the windows.	* ... ( vejr )	* overise ng.
As the <b>icy</b> wind has <b>iced</b> ( ) <b>up</b> the windows,	* ... ( vind )	* =
it's difficult to look through the <b>icy</b> windows.	* isbelagt / -dækket	
<b>10</b> Twenty degrees of frost have <b>frozen</b> several locks,	* ~ få ng. til at fryse til	
water pipes etc. in exposed places.	*	
The clothes have <b>frozen solid</b> on the <b>line</b> :	* ~ blive stivfrossen	* ( tørre- ) snor
the <b>clothes line</b> or <b>washing line</b> (E).	* & vasketøjssnor	* =
Where the pipes have <b>frozen</b> , people have no water.	* fryse til	
<b>Giving a frosty look</b> upwards, people swear <b>frostily</b>	* ~ sende > koldt, ~ uvenligt	* blik * - = -
at the <b>Clerk of the Weather / the Weather Clerk</b> .	* medhjælper ( ⇔ ) * vejr, ~ vejrguderne	
People have to <b>thaw</b> the frozen locks and pipes.	* optø ng.	
As the heat from the boiling hot water just slowly <b>melts</b>	* smelte ng.	
the frozen water, it may take some time to <b>thaw</b> ( ) <b>out</b> a pipe.	* optø ng.	
<b>20</b> The locals are still talking of the big <b>freeze</b> (E) of '82:	* frost ( -periode )	
a period of long lasting frost.	*	
Research has shown about 20 major repeated <b>ice ages</b>	* is-	* tidsalder
going back <b>billions</b> of years.	* milliard	~ istid
Each <b>glacial period</b> , causing the <b>ice caps</b> to increase,	* istids-	* periode * is- * kappe
until increasing temperatures caused the ice to retreat,	& istid	
lasted for thousands of years.	*	
Each <b>interglacial period</b> lasted for millions of years.	* mellemistids-	* periode
The <b>`Ice Age</b> , the last glacial period, ended about	* istiden	& mellemistid
10, 000 years ago.	*	
Many areas, the <b>glacial</b> landscapes such as <b>moraine</b> (U)	* glacial	* moræne- / istids-
and <b>moraines</b> , are formed by <b>glacial</b> processes such as	* istids-, gletcher-	gletcher aflejring
	* - bakker	* =
<b>30 glacial erosion</b> and <b>glacial deposits</b> .	* ... erosion / nedbrydning	* ... aflejring

**1384** Formed by snow on mountains, large masses of ice that move down a valley is called a **glacier**.

Large pieces of ice that break off the glaciers in the sea form **icebergs**.

Only about 20% of an iceberg rises above the surface of the water which means that about 80 % is **submerged**.

The **Little Ice Age** was a period of particular severe winters, **glacial** temperatures and **glacial** winds, that **gripped** northern Europe in the middle of the **second millennium**.

**10**

Ann and Al have to **check`out** of their suite before noon.

Al has a **current account** so he can **make out** a **cheque**.

So when they **check out**, Al **pays** the bill **by cheque** (E)

**Making a cheque out to** the hotel from his **chequebook**, he **writes out** a cheque **payable to** the hotel.

**Writing a cheque for** £ 150, he **draws a cheque on** the amount of the bill plus a **tip**.

When the hotel **cashes** the **cheque** in the bank, the bank **pays** the **cheque**.

**20** In America, when you **open a checking account** you get a **checkbook** full of **checks**.

If someone **pays by credit card**, the receiver of the money **keys in** the amount on the **credit card machine** / **card payment machine** after which the **cardholder** or **user of** the **credit card** types in the right **PIN ( number )**.

The display shows each step of the transaction, and the machine **will make out** a **receipt**.

Today money can be transferred by **mobile phone** E/eA **cellular`phone /`cell ( phone )**.

**30**

- \*
- \* gletcher
- \*
- \* isbjerg
- \*
- \* neddykket, ~ under overfladen
- \* den lille istid
- \* iskold                      \* =                      \* ( gribe ) / ~ få et fast tag i ng.
- \* andet årtusinde ( tyvende århundrede )
- \*
- \* tjekke ud fra / ~ være ude af ng.
- \* checkkonto              \* udstede >                      \* check
- \* tjekke ud                      \* betale med check
- \* være ude og få betalt
- \* udstede en check til ng.                      \* checkhæfte
- \* =                      \* betalbar / til betaling til ng.
- \* skrive ... på x                      \* =
- \* drikkepenge
- \* indløse >                      \* check
- \* = / udbetale
- \* & oprette >                      \* checkkonto
- \* -hæfte                      \* check
- \* betale via / med >                      \* kreditkort
- \* indtaste                      \* kreditkortmaskine
- \* ~ betalingskortmaskine                      \* kortholder
- \* ~ kortbruger                      \* PIN ( ~ kode )
- \*                      Personal Identificational Number
- \*
- \* ~ udskrive >                      \* kvittering
- \* mobiltelefon
- \* ~ =

# HOME AGAIN

**1385** They have spent a most **agreeable** holiday together,  
and their faces have obviously **caught the sun**.

Austria **was at its sunniest**

as they had **sunny** weather almost every day.

They **have pictures of** their holiday.

They are **pictured setting off** ( **for** their honeymoon ).

They are **pictured** happy.

Looking **fit** and **suntanned**, they **had** their **picture taken**  
in front of the hotel they **stayed at**.

**10** They look fit and **tanned** ( E& **sunburned** / <**burnt** )  
although their noses have been a little **sunburned** / <**burnt**.

**Images** of people, animals, and plants decorate the walls.  
of the hotel they **stayed in**.

They also saw **icons** / **ikons**: painted or wooden **images of**  
Jesus and Virgin Mary or other holy persons.

In tourist shops, they sell cheap mass-produced icons  
manufactured in **flimsy** pieces of plastic.

Some people **made** the **sign of the cross**  
before these **graven images**.

**20** They are **images** of **devotion**.  
Old Testament fundamentalists believe that  
**man is created** / **made in God's image**.

**Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven images**.

In other religions people practice **image worship of**  
their gods by worshipping **idols**.

A **picture shows** Ann in the lift.

Next time they travel to france by **hovercraft**.

A **hovercraft hovers** and rides on a **cushion of** air.

They visit a place with the ruins of Roman villas and **baths**.  
ba~dz

**30** Rain may **wash lettering away**.

The rain has **washed away** the lettering on a stone.

\* behagelig, herlig

\* ~ få sol / kulør, blive solbrændt

\* ~ vise sig fra sin solrigeste side

\* solrigt / solskins- ( vejr )

\* have billeder / foto af / fra ngt

\* ( være ) afbildet > \* tagende afsted \* mod ~ på  
bryllupsrejse

\* ( være ) ... + adj.

\* ~ sund og rask \* solbrændt \* få sit billede taget

\* bo på ( hotel )

\* solbrænt

\* solskoldet

\* afbildning

\* bo på ( hotel )

\* ikon \* afbildning ( billede / statue ) af ngt.

\*

\*

\* skrøbelig, ~ usolidt lavet

\* gøre > \* korsets tegn

\* udskåret \* afbildning

\* ( sind- ) billede / \* hengivenhed  
symbol på ngt.

\*

\* mennesket blev skabt i Guds billede

\* du må ikke gøre dig noget udskåret billede

\* billed- \* tilbedelse af ng.

\* gudebillede

\* billede \* vise ngt.

\* luftpudefartøj

\* = \* svæve \* pude af ( luft )

\* bade

\* vaske ngt. bort \* bogstavmærkning

\*

=

## THE `ADVERTISING AGENCY

**1386** Al's advertising agency is **housed in a suite of** offices.  
swi~t af

The agency makes **tailored advertisements**

**for** all kinds of clients, and **to** all kinds of consumers.

The agency has to **be in the swim: in the swim of things.**

They aim at **suiting** all their customers.  
`s(j)u~ting

Most customers want **tailor-made ads.**

The agency **tailors** the ads **to** meet individual requirements,  
and **tailor** the ads **for** special purposes.

So the advertising agency and the customers

**10 tailor** their purposes and actions **to** those of one another.

Trying to **agree** a price either party suggest a price  
to **suit themselves.**

In the end, a price must **suit** both parties.

In order to **agree on** a price, both parties **suit** their **side of**  
the **bargain to** the price.

Some customers want their advertisements **tailored to**  
consumers in common, **tailored to** popular tastes,  
and **tailored for** common purposes.

These ads are often **tailored to** the **same pattern.**

**20** Some customers want the **spread of** their advertisements  
**tailored for** special purposes.

So the designers must **tailor** the ads **for** special events,  
and **tailor** the ads **to** meet the needs of specific groups.

A designer must be able to **sacrifice inclination to duty.**

An ad may cover a double page **spread.**

The designer must **suit** his style **to** his clients  
so the agency is known to produce advertisements  
which **suit** the **time** and the **occasion.**

The **finished** product must live up to the customers  
**30** expectations.

The agency has no strict **dress code.**

\* ~ reklamebureau

\* have til huse i ngt. \* suite, ~ forbunden række af >  
( kontorer )

\* skræddersyet \* annonce / reklame >

\* for ngt. \* til ngt.

\* ~ med på noderne / hvor det sker

\* tilfredsstille ngt.

\* skræddersyet \* annonce

= advertisement

\* skræddersy ngt. til at -

\* ... ngt. til ngt.

\*

\* ~ samordne ngt. til ngt.

\* blive enige om ngt.

\* som det passer en ( selv )

\* passe ( til ) ngt.

\* blive enige om ngt. \* tilpasse ngt. > \* side af >

\* aftale \* til ngt.

\* skræddersyet til ngt.

\* ... til ngt.

\* ... til ngt.

\* ( syet efter samme mønster )

~ skåret over samme læst

\* layout af ngt.

\* skræddersy til ngt.

\* =

\* =

\* ofre > \* hang, tilbøjelighed \* til pligten  
~ lade pligten gå forud for lysten

\* layout

\* tilpasse ngt. til ngt.

\*

\* passe til > \* tid \* lejlighed

\* færdig

\*

\* påklædnings-

\* kode, reglement

**1387 Image** is very important in the business world.

Many advertisements are **intended to improve**  
a company's **image**.

People working at an **advertising agency** often claim  
that advertising business **marries** art and business.

As it **marries** art **to** business, it **marries** art **with** business.

Some artists **contempt, disdain** and **despise**  
the **marriage of** art and business.

Every morning Al **has** a quick **check** to see

**10** if any important letters have arrived yet.

A letter easily **gets buried under** a pile of papers.

Some letters are **relegated to** the **waste-`paper basket**.

Al **spreads** the work **among** the staff members.

Members of the staff **spread** the **workload among** them.

Al **relegates** some tasks **to** his secretary,

and **relegates** some decisions **to** the staff members.

**In peak periods** when the staff is **attacked**  
**by a blizzard of unfinished business**, it's impossible  
to **spread** the **bulk of work** over a period of time.

**20** Completely **snowed under** ( **with work** ) all the staff  
has to **do / work overtime**.

It's an **uphill struggle**; the offices seem a **disaster area**.  
as everybody's brain **is working overtime**.

The staff **spreads** ( **out** ) their **work** all over.

**Discarding** a lot of **rough drafts as** useless,  
some of the staff **discard** a lot of sheets of paper  
and **spill discarded** sheets all over.

If they **crumple** a sheet, or **crumple** a sheet **up into** a ball  
and try to hit the **waste-`paper basket** E/A **wastebasket**,  
**30** the **crumpled-up** paper may end on the floor anyway as it  
**spills** from the top of the already **brimful** waste-paper basket.

So a lot of **waste `paper spills** all over the floor.

Working late reminds them of the **`graveyard shift** (eA)

**It's** ( **all** ) **downhill** the next couple of days.  
-`hil

In the morning an office **cleaner** picks up all the **discards**,  
and empties the **waste-paper baskets** into a **disposal sack**.

Having **done / worked overtime**, people expect to  
**be paid overtime // receive overtime pay / earnings**.

\* image, ~ det billede / den opfattelse folk har af ngt.

\* have til hensigt at - \* forbedre >

\* image, ~ billede i offentlighedens øjne

\* ~ reklame- \* bureau

\* forene / forlene / sammenknytte ng. og ngt.

\* knytte ngt. til ngt. \* forene / forlene ngt. med ngt.

\* foragte / ringeagte / se ned på ngt. \* = \* =

\* forening / forlening / sammenknytning af ngt og ngt.

\* foretage > \* et ( hurtigt ) tjek

\*

\* blive > \* begravet under ngt.

\* henvise ngt. til ngt. \* papirkurv

\* fordele ( arbejdet ) blandt ng.

\* ... > \* arbejdsbyrde \* imellem sig

\* henvise / overdrage ( opgave ) til ng.

\* - - - ( beslutning ) - - -

\* spidsbelastnings- \* perioder \* ~ overvældet af >

\* snestorm \* ufærdigt > \* arbejde  
~ et væld af ngt.

\* sprede > \* pukkel af > \* arbejde  
& arbejdsbukkel

\* ~ overlæsset / -bebyrdet > \* med ( arbejde )

\* arbejde

\* opadbakke ⇔ \* kamp \* katastrofe- \* område

\* ~ arbejde på højtryk

\* sprede > \* arbejdsmaterialer

\* - - - > \* rå \* skitser \* som ngt.  
~ kladder

\* frasortere / kassere ngt.

\* komme til at sprede ngt. \* frasorteret  
kasseret

\* krølle \* krølle ngt. sammen til ngt.

\* ~ papirkurv

\* sammenkrøllet

\* falde ned \* fyldt til randen ~ propfuld

\* affaldspapir \* være spredt

\* ~ nat- eller tidlig morgenskitte

\* det er > \* ( bare ) ned ad bakke

\* ~ rengøringsassistent \* ~ kasserede ting

\* ~ papirkurv \* affaldssæk

\* ~ haft overarbejde

\* ~ få overarbejdsbetaling

<b>1388</b> One of the designers often wants to <b>give</b> the work <b>a rest</b> .	* give ngt. en pause, ~ lægge ngt. fra sig
Always wanting to <b>have a rest from</b> hard work,	* have / få > * ( hvile-) pause fra ngt.
he often <b>takes a rest from</b> his work.	* tage sig en ...
Working late doesn't <b>suit</b> the designer either.	* passe ( ej passiv / pres. part. ) ng.
It <b>suits</b> him <b>to</b> start work early in the morning	* ... ng. at -
so if he never had to work late, <b>it would suit</b> him.	* det ville > * passe ng.
He often <b>slopes</b> away (E); slopes away from working late.	* snige sig ( væk )
He can be very helpful but only when <b>it suits</b> him.	* det passer ng.
That <b>style</b> doesn't <b>suit</b> the agency.	* stil * passe ( til ) ngt.
<b>10</b> If a staff member <b>puts effort into</b> his work to <b>suit himself</b> ,	* lægge energi i ngt. * som det passer dem selv
and <b>is inclined to slope off</b> , he <b>wooes discontent</b> (<ment ).	* være tilbøjelig / * smutte * bejle til > * utilfredshed - `tent have hang til at - misfornøjelse
If he wants to quit the job, that <b>suits</b> the manager <b>fine</b> .	* passe ng. > * fint / udmærket
They <b>waste</b> a lot of <b>time waiting for</b> him <b>to</b> finish his part.	* spille > * tid på at - * vente på ng. ⇔ at -
They <b>waste</b> a lot of <b>money in</b> waiting for his job to be done.	* ... > * penge * på at -
The manager <b>wastes</b> his <b>efforts on</b> him.	* ... > * ( sine ) kræfter * på ng.
He <b>wastes</b> his <b>words</b> and <b>wastes</b> his <b>time</b> .	* spille > * ( sine ) ord * ... tiden / sin tid
He's <b>wasting</b> his <b>time</b> trying to explain to him why it's	* ... sin tid med / på at -
so important to <b>observe</b> the <b>time of delivery</b> .	* overholde > * tiden for > * aflevering ~ afleveringsfristen
When a <b>deadline</b> is <b>set / imposed</b> , the agency expects	* færdiggøre / blive færdig med ngt. * skitse udkast
<b>20</b> that a staff member <b>finishes</b> a <b>sketch in good time</b> .	* i god tid
The customers expect the agency to <b>finish</b> a <b>sketch in time</b>	* færdiggøre > * skitse, udkast * i tide
so Why should the agency <b>waste</b> money <b>on</b> a colleague	* spille ( penge ) på ng.
who is not prepared to <b>work to</b> a ( tight / strict ) <b>deadline</b> .	* arbejde > * ~ op imod > * en ( stram ) deadline / tidsfrist
The agency won't like a customer	*
to <b>have</b> a <b>legitimate grievance</b> .	* have en / et > * berettiget * klage / -mål / -punkt lê`dšitimêt
If the staff don't <b>observe / meet</b> the <b>deadline</b> ,	* ~ overholde > * ~ tidsfrist for ngt.
and <b>miss</b> the <b>deadline for</b> delivery,	* ~ ikke overholde
or if any other <b>grievance against</b> them is <b>legitimate</b> ,	* << rettet imod ng. * <<
they'll <b>waste</b> an <b>opportunity to</b> have another <b>assignment</b> .	* ( for- ) spille > * mulighed / * opgave chance for at -
<b>30</b> It will be a <b>wasted opportunity</b> .	* ( for- ) spildt * mulighed
A meeting is a <b>waste</b> of <b>time</b> as the staff member seems	* spild af > * tid & tidsspilde
unable to <b>discard</b> his bad habits.	* fralægge sig ngt.
Even if he has a <b>legitimate excuse</b> or a <b>legitimate reason</b>	* berettiget * undskyldning * & gyldig * grund
for his poor efforts, the staff member is a <b>time waster</b> .	* tids- * ~ røver
Letting this man organize a job is a <b>recipe for disaster</b> .	* opskrift på > * katastrofe & oplagt ...
If a designer can't <b>cope with</b> the <b>pressure of work</b> ,	* hamle op med / klare ngt. * ~ arbejdspres
he is a <b>disaster as</b> staff member.	* katastrofe som ngt.
He may eventually be <b>discarded: discarded as</b> a <b>waster</b> .	* tilsidesætte / * ~ umulig afskedige ng.



**1389** Stress is often an **occupational** disease.

It may be an **occupationally induced** disease.

The effects of stress of work can **spill over into home life**.

It might **be downhill all the way** for a person's **health**,

**for his career**, and **for his marriage**.

A **discard's** career will **go downhill**

as he will have to **discard** all thoughts of promotion.

Stress is an **accupational hazard** / **risk**.

A person **handicapped by physical or mental defects**  
'de-fekts / di'-

**10** may be **cured by an occupational therapist**.

If **occupational therapy** won't **restore** a person's **health**,  
they may be **dismissed from** their job as a **legitimate** result.

Losing your job doesn't have to be such a **disaster**.

Some people are **granted** a pension **by** the government.

**It's not granted to** everybody throughout the world **to**  
receive a pension: **it's** actually **far from granted**.

Al **legitimately** argues that if a person isn't  
**suited for** designing in the advertising business,  
they are **wasted as** an advertising designer.

**20** 'A person that is not **suited to** a job here,  
is not **suited for** the advertising business,' Al **reasons**.

Some people who are used to have a **cushy** job  
always want to get a **cushy number(E)**.

Sometimes, in the advertising business,  
**recruitment** is not **keeping pace with wastage**.

Lack of jobs results in a huge **wastage of** talent.

Even if a person is given a **glowing recommendation**,  
he may be unable to get a job.

**What a tragic waste !**

**30 What a waste of** talent !

Other times **job hunters** are being **wooded**.

They may be **wooded with perquisites** such as  
'pê-kwizits  
**tailor-made perks / tailored fringe benefits**  
offered by the firm.

\* erhvervsmæssig ( sygdom )

\* erhvervsmæssigt \* påføret

\* brede sig til ngt. \* hjemme- \* liv  
& livet derhjemme  
\* ~ gå ned ad bakke med > \* helbred

\* karriere \* ægteskab

\* tilsidesat / \* ( karriere ) gå ned ad bakke  
udrangeret person  
\* fralægge sig / opgive ngt.

\* erhvervs- ( mæssig ) \* risiko

\* & erhvervshæmmet ( person )

\* helbredt af ng. \* ~ ergo- \* terapeut

\* ergo- \* terapi \* genoprette ngs. > \* helbred

\* afskedige ng. fra ngt. \* berettiget  
forventeligt

\* katastrofe

\* bevilliget / tildelt / ydet af ng.

\* det er ikke ( enhver ) beskåret / givet at -

\* ... langt fra givet

\* berettiget

\* egnet til at -

\* spildt / ubrugelig / ikke egnet som ngt.

\* egnet til ngt.

\* ~ egner sig ( ikke ) til ngt. \* argumentere

\* behagelig, let, magelig

\* ~ ... tjans

\*

\* hvernig \* holde trit med > \* fragang  
tilgang

\* spild af ngt.

\* strålende \* anbefaling

\*

\* sikken et ( tragisk ) spild

\* ... af ngt.

\* jobsøger \* bejlet til

\* ... med ngt. \* frynsegoder

\* skræddersyet \* frynse- \* goder \* = \* =

\*

<b>1390</b> The problem about the <b>self-willed</b> designer <b>snowballs</b> .	* egenrådig	* ~ vokse som en snebold ( vokse med stigende hast )
Reluctant to <b>take</b> anyone's <b>well-meant advice on board</b> ,	*	
he doesn't seem to be <b>amanable to</b> advice.	* lydhør overfor ng.	
So his lack of <b>amanability</b> <b>snowballs</b> the problem.	* lydhørhed	* få ng. til at <<
As the <b>waster</b> is eventually fired, the agency needs	* umulig	
a new designer, <b>suited to</b> the agency, and <b>suited for</b> a career	* passende / egnet til ng.	* ... til ng.
in the agency.	*	
A newcomer must be prepared to <b>see</b> a job <b>through to</b>	* nyankommen	* gennemføre ng. helt til >
the <b>finish</b> , and not <b>jump`ship</b> .	* ~ vejs ende	* ~ rømme fra et skib ~ springe fra i utide
<b>10</b> There has been a number of <b>suitable candidates for</b> a job.	* passende	* kandidat til ( job )
There has been <b>suitably</b> qualified candidates.	* =	
The agency <b>is out for</b> a <b>congenial</b> colleague to <b>suit</b> its	* være ude efter ng.	* åndsbeslægtet * passe til >
particular <b>needs</b> .	* behov	
A <b>casual</b> worker, though, seems <b>suitable for</b> the job,	* ~ løst ansat	* passende / egnet ( job )
and ready to <b>be thrown in at the deep end</b> .	* ~ blive kastet ud på dybt vand	
Being an <b>agreeable</b> person, he seems extremely <b>agreeable</b> .	* behagelig	
The new <b>pleasant</b> designer <b>jumps</b> the <b>chance</b> ,	* =	* ~ ( ivrigt ) gribe > * chancen
and <b>jumps in at the deep end</b> in his first job.	* ~ springe ud på det dybe vand	
' That's <b>the spirit</b> ,' Al <b>announces</b> .	* rette ånd / indstilling	* bekendtgøre bebude, meddele
<b>20</b> The job seems <b>congenial to</b> the newcomer	* lige egnet / som skabt til ng.	
so he seems to have found <b>congenial</b> employment.	* egnet ( beskæftigelse ), ~ som skabt til en	
As he <b>enjoys</b> a <b>congenial</b> working environmen,	* nyde ( godt af ) ng.	* - - -
the newcomer is <b>co-operative</b> and hard working.	* samarbejdsvillig	
That <b>suits</b> the agency's <b>book</b> .	* ~ passe i ngs. kram	
It <b>suits</b> the manager <b>down to the ground</b> .	* ~ passe ng. >	* helt og aldeles
It <b>just suits</b> him; it <b>suits</b> him to a T.	* - - -	* ... på en prik
When the <b>honeymoon period</b> for the new designer is over,	* hvedebrødsdage, indkøringsperiode	
he seems <b>tailor-made for</b> the job.	* skræddersyet til ng.	
He <b>proved to suit</b> the <b>action to the word</b> .	* vise sig at -	* ~ lade handling følge ord
<b>30</b> As he has a <b>razor-`sharp mind</b> ,	* knivskarp	* forstand tankegang
and always <b>checks</b> his work before handing it in,	* kontrollere ng.	
he is soon <b>recommended for promotion</b> .	* ( være ) anbefalet / indstillet til ng.	* forfremmelse
<b>Keeping</b> his <b>own counsel</b> / <b>holding</b> his <b>tongue</b> ,	* holde det for sig selv / ~ holde tand for tunge	
Al decides to <b>promote</b> the newcomer	* forfremme ng.	
and <b>employ</b> him <b>on a permanent basis</b> .	* ( være ) fastansat på >	* varig * basis
<b>Promoted from odd-job man to</b> a designer,	* ... fra >	* altnuligmand * til ( designer )
he will be <b>promoted to</b> a <b>senior</b> job.	* ( være ) forfremmet til ng.	* ~ overordnet ( job )

**1391** Although there is no doubt about his **suitability for** the job, the newcomer's **promotion to** a designer **takes** everybody **by surprise**.

Al never **showed** his **hand** / **cards** E/A **tipped** his **hand**, so the newcomer is **suitably** affected when Al brings him the good news.

The new job is certainly a **promotion for** him.

Although the newcomer had actually **jumped ship** just before he was **employed on a casual basis**, he now **10 jumps from** an odd-job man **to a permanently employed** designer.

It's a job with excellent **promotion prospects**.

\*

\*

\* egnethed til ngt.

\* forfremmelse til ngt.

\* ~ overraske ng.

\*

\* tilbørligt, ~ som det sig hør og bør

\*

\* forfremmelse for ng.

\* ~ rømme fra et skib

\* ~ ( blive ) ansat > ~ løst ansat \* på løs basis

\* ~ stige direkte fra ngt. til > \* fast \* ansat ( designer )

\*

\* advancements- / forfremmelses- \* udsigter

## MOVING TO A NEW HOUSE

Since Ann **moved in with** Al, the newly weds **share a flat**.

They want, however, to **share a house**.

Many cities **spread into** the surrounding areas.

**Suburbs** thus grow up as a result of the **spread of** a city.  
`sû-bêbz

**20** The early **settlers** in the new suburbs for big city ` **spillover** **occupied** the best land.

Having **cut a swathe / swath through** the countryside, development has affected vast **swathes of** the countryside.  
sweid swa#

**The burbs** (A) are pretty much plain **vanilla** (eA).

Some people regard the suburbs as a **wasteland**

where **suburban** dwellers **live at the back of beyond**.  
- - -

So middle-class **suburbia** is regarded as a **cultural `desert**

where **suburbanites** live in the **middle of nowhere** /  
sê`bê-bênait  
live in the **back of beyond**.

**30** Looking for a house, they have a **wasted trip** to begin with as the owners **aren't in**.

**Touring at random** on an **sunny** and **agreeably** warm day, they don't have a **wasted** day, though.

As they enjoy **trading stories** about their past, frequently **exchange ideas** and **witty remarks**, and easily **engage** themselves in **spirited discussions**, there's **never** a **dull moment**.

\* flytte sammen med ng. \* dele > \* en lejlighed ~ bo sammen i ...

\* - - - i hus

\* brede sig > \* ud i ngt.

\* forstad \* udbredning af ( by )

\* nybygger, tilflytter \* overflod

\* sætte sig i besiddelse af ngt.

\* ~ gøre indhug i ngt.

\* strækninger af ( frilandet )

\* forstad \* almindelig og ordinær

\* kulturelt / intellektuelt udørk ( -en )

\* forstads- \* leve \* bagi \* bagi ~ i en udørk ( -en )

\* forstæder & forstadskultur \* kulturel \* ørken

\* forstadsperson \* ~ i en udørken

\* <<

\* spildt \* tur, udflugt

\* være hjemme

\* ture \* ~ omkring på må og få \* solrig \* behagelig

\* spildt ( dag )

\* udveksle > \* historier

\* ... > \* ideer \* kvik / vittig \* bemærkning

\* engagere sig > \* i > \* livlig \* diskussion

\* aldrig \* ( et ) kedeligt \* øjeblik

**1392** Some of the **unoccupied** houses which have not **been occupied** (o. pred.) for a long time are **in poor repair**.

The house they one day buy is **in a bad state of repair**.

As the house **is in bad repair** and **in need of repair**, **repairs** must be done to the house.

Ann and Al can't move in until after the **repair** of the house.

The previous **occupiers** of the house were **tenants** while Al and Ann are **owner-occupiers**.

The level of **owner occupation** has increased rapidly.

**10 Outstanding** bills must be paid by the previous **occupants**.

Many **quarrels** have **occured between** the previous owner and the tenants **in occupation** before the house was sold.

Some **flimsy / rickety furniture** has to be **discarded**.

**Discarding** some **pieces of furniture** too **flimsily** made, they **scrap** a **flimsy / rickety** table together with some **flimsy / rickety** chairs **belonging to it**.

They decide to keep an old **chest of drawers** E/A& a **bureau / dresser** **worthy of preservation**.

All **pots and pans** and other **discards**

**20** such as some **chipped fragile / frail china** are **scrap**. ( China easily **chip** so you easily **chip** a piece of china. )

Some **repairmen** are engaged to **renovate** the house, that is to say engaged to **repair** and paint the house.

When they **start doing** the **renovation**, the repairmen **set about** repairing the house.

So the repairmen **set about** the **repair** which **embraces** inside and outside.

**Engaged on** the renovation, the plumber **checks** the old hot water **tank**: he **check** the tank **for** cracks and leaks.

**30** A new tank and **boiler** are made of stainless steel **plates**.

The bathroom is provided with **ceramic tiles**.

The **tiler** provides the **tiled** roof with some new **tiles**.

A door **closes / shuts with resistance**, so to **remedy** and **put right** its **inclination to stick**, and make it **shut**, a few milimetres have to be **shaved`off** the door.

The repairman uses a **plane** to **plane** the door.

He **shaves** a few milimetres **off** the door.

\* ubeboet ( hus )

\* være beboet \* i ringe > \* ~ vedligeholdesestilstand ~ dårligt vedligeholdt

\* - = -

\* - = - \* ~ trænge til istandsættelse

\* reparation, istandsættelse

\* istandssættelse af ( hus )

\* besidder / beboer af ( hus ) \* lejer

\* ejer- \* bebsidder / beboer

\* ejer- \* besiddelse

\* udestående / ubetalt ( regning ) \* beboer

\* uenighed, strid \* opstå mellem ng. skænderi  
\* bolig- / besiddelsesforhold

\* usolidt \* inventar \* kasseret / møblement smidt væk

\* kassere ng. / \* stykke møblement \* usolidt ( lavet ) smide ng. væk ~ møbel

\* kassere / smide ng. væk \* skrøbelig, usolid

\* = ⇔ \* tilhørende ( til ng. )

\* kommode

\* = / = \* ~ bevaringsværdig

\* potter og pander \* ~ kasseret genstand

\* skåret \* skrøbeligt, skørt \* porcelæn \* skrot

\* ~ få skår \* give ng. skår

\* reparatør \* renovere / istandsætte ng.

\* reparere / istandsætte ng.

\* begynde på / \* renovering gå i gang med ng. istandsættelse  
\* - - - at -

\* - - - ng. \* reparation istandsættelse

\* omfatte ng.

\* i færd med / optaget af ng. \* kontrollere ng.

\* tank, beholder \* ... ( tank ) for ( revne, utæthed )

\* vandvarmer \* plade

\* keramisk \* flise

\* tegltækker \* tegltækket \* tegl

\* lukke > \* med besvær \* afhjælpe >

\* ~ rette op på > \* tilbøjelighed til at - \* binde \* lukkes

\* rage / ~ tage ng. af ng.

\* høvl \* høvle ng.

\* tage x af ng.

**1393** Inside the house all was dark and **muted**.

A **flimsy partition wall** must be removed.

Many materials and much furniture are **available**

in a **range of finishes**.

Having torn down some old wallpaper, the decorators

**washe () down** the walls **with ammonia water**, and use

a **spatula** as a **scraper** to **scrape off scraps** of old paper.

Some walls are going to **be ( wall> ) papered**.

When they **wallpaper**, they unroll the **rolls** of **wallpaper**,

**10** and apply **wallpaper paste** on the back before they

**hang wallpaper ( onto the walls ) / put wallpaper onto - - - .**

The house **is repainted** in bright **muted** colours.

Some walls that were a **washed-out** dark colour

is given a yellow **wash**.

The walls look brilliant with a pale yellow **wash**.

If a painter **applies** the **paint** thickly, it won't **spread evenly**  
so they **thin** the paint **with turpentine /E& white `spirit**.

The painters **apply** extra **coats** of **finish**  
either a **gloss** or a **matt finish**.

**20** The roof is **leaking** so water **leaks into** the **loft**.

A **builder repairs** the **leak in** the roof,  
and **replaces** a **tinplate** roof of an old **shed**.

By means of a ( **`spirit** ) **level**, he makes sure that **vertical**  
and **horizontal** constructions are **true to ( `spirit ) level**.

The house has a **suite** of rooms: three rooms **en suite**.

The repairmen need another week to **finish off** the repair  
so they won't **be finished for** another week.

They **finish** the repair **off** in less than a week, though.

The indoor architect **tailors** the house **to** the wishes

**30** of the **occupants**.

The have a modern bathroom **suite**, and a bedroom **suite**  
including a **dressng table /A& vanity ( table )** for Ann.

In the **living room / E& sitting room**,  
they have a **three piece suite** with two armchairs and a sofa.

The top of the **coffee table** is a **sheet of glass**.

A giant **double bed** seems to **occupy** most of the bedroom.

When the house is ready for **occupation**,  
they **take** the **house together**.

\* afdæmpet

\* skrøbelig, usolidt bygget \* skille- \* væg

\* tilgængelig

\* række af > \* efterbehandling  
\* sidste afpudsning

\* ... med ngt. \* ammoniak- \* vand  
~ salmiakspiritus

\* spartel \* skraper \* skrape > af \* ( papir-) rester

\* ~ blive tapetseret

\* tapetsere \* ~ tapetruller

\* ~ tapetklister

\* ~ sætte tapet op ( på ngt. )

\* ( blive ) genmalet \* afdæmpet

\* udvasket ( farve )

\* maler \* ~ strykning

\* =

\* påføre > \* maling \* sprede sig / -s \* jævnt  
brede sig ud  
\* fortynde ngt. med > \* ~ mineralsk terpentin

\* påføre ngt. \* lag \* overfladebehandling

\* blank \* mat \* =

\* skinnende

\* lække \* sive ind i ngt. \* loft (-rum )

\* bygningshåndværker \* læk i ngt.

\* erstatte ngt. \* blik- ( plade ) \* skur

\* ~ libelle, vaterpas \* vertikal, lodret

\* horisontal, vandret \* ~ i vater

\* & følge \* & i rækkefølge

\* afslutte / færdiggøre ngt.

\* være færdig indenfor ( en uge mere )

\* <<

\* tilpasse ( hus ) til ( ønske )

\* beboer

\* møblementssæt \* =

\* toiletbord

\* dagligstue

\* tre- \* sæts \* møblement

\* sofabord \* glasplade ( norm. rektang. )

\* dobbeltseng \* optage ( plads )

\* ~ indflytning

\* ~ flytte sammen i hus

**1394** Ann and Al have a new **nameplate** on the door.

The **brass plate** reads / says Ann and Al Jennings.

Al wants to **scythe** the **weed**, and cut a **swath(e)** along  
said swâ# ( sweið )  
the drive so with a **razor-sharp scythe**, he cuts a **swath(e)**.

The house **is a picture** and the garden **looks a picture**  
with beautiful **sunflowers, chicories, great mulleins** etc.

A **drystone wall** (E) is **overgrown with lichen** and moss.  
laiken

The **mossy dry wall** (A) **inclines towards** the **lawn**.

To prevent the **sunny** garden from being **overgrown with**

**10** weed, Ann **holds** the weed **in check**.

Al **keeps** the **lawn in check** as he **mows** ( the **grass** );  
**cutting** the **grass**, he **cuts** the **lawn**.

When he has **mowed / mown** ( the **lawn** ) with the **mower**,  
there's a smell of **new-mown hay**.

His motor mower is a **rotary** mower.

The cold spring will **provide** a natural **check**:  
a **check on** the number of insects.

The house has a **sun lounge** /eA **sunroom**,  
and a **suntrap** outside.

**20** They have **deck chairs, sunloungers** (E) and **sunbeds**.

Some **loungers** have **armrests** and a **footrest**.

On top of the **sunbed** there's a **foam mattress** made of  
**foam** `rubber.

They have a **sunshade** or **parasol** on the **sun terrace**.

Some people do their best to **keep out of** the **sun**  
while others uses a **sunlamp** to turn the skin brown.

The sunlamp produces **ultraviolet rays**  
ûltrê`vaiêlêt  
which penetrate the skin, and cause the skin to produce  
dark **melanin** as a protection against the rays.

**30** Too much **sun ages** the skin.

The terrace has a **sundial**.

The house **is just as** they had **imagined** it.

They had **imagined** the house just **as** it is.

One night the countryside is **bathed in moonlight**.

A full moon **bathes** the countryside,  
and **bathes** the front of house **in** a silver **light**  
while the back of the house lies **swathed in** dark.

**Swathes / swaths** of moonlight **penetrates** the darkness.  
sweiðð swâ-ðz

\* navneskilt

\* messing

\* plade, skilt

\* slå / meje >

\* ukrudt

\* skâr  
( bar stribe )  
\* =

\* barberbladskarp

\* le

\* ~ være billedskøn

\* se ... ud

\* solsikke

\* cikorie

\* kongelys

\* stengærde  
( u. mørtel )

\* overbegrøet med ngt.

\* lav

\* mosbegrøet \* = \* hælde mod ngt. \* græsplæne

\* solrig

\* <<

\* holde ( ukrudt ) i skak / ave

\* ... ( græsplæne ) ...

\* slå ( græsset )

\* slå ...

\* slå græs ( plænen )

\* slå ( plænen )

\* græsslåmaskine

\* nyslået

\* hø

\* rotor-

\* tilvejebringe >

\* afbødning, begrænsning

\* ... af ngt.

\* udestue

\* =

\* ( solfælde ) ~ læindhegning m. sol

\* liggestol

\* hvileliggestol  
drømmeseng

\* drømmeseng

\* = sun lounge

\* armstøtte

\* benstøtte

\* drømmeseng

\* skum (-gummi)-

\* madras

\* skum-

\* gummi

\* solparasol

\* parasol

\* sol-

\* terrasse

\* & undgå solen

\* ~ højfjeldssol

\* =

\* stråle

\*

\* =

\* sol ( -skin )

\* ælde ( hud )

\* ~ solur

\* være som ng. forestiller / tænker sig ngt.

\* forestille / tænke sig ngt. som -

\* badet i >

\* måneskin

\* ( månen ) bade ngt. ( i lys )

\* ... ngt. i >

\* ( sølvskinnende ) lys

\* svøbt / indhyllet i ( mørke )

\* bånd / stribe af ngt.

\* gennemtrænge ngt.

**1395** When they **were first married**, they both wanted to **start a family**.

Since they **were first married** they wanted to **raise a family**.

Looking forward to **bringing up a family**,

they are one day **blessed with a ( fine ) healthy** daughter.

Many times a day, the baby **falls in a deep sleep**:

it doesn't easily wake up from a **profound sleep**.

They **go and `check on** the baby **by turns**.

**Changing** the baby, they **change** her **nappy** E/A **diaper**.

**10** They use a **baby wiper** to **wipe** the baby's **bottom**.

Her skin is **as white as snow**.

Once a month the baby **has a health check** by a **health visitor**.

She may **roll** the baby ( **over** ) **onto** her **stomac**, and **roll** her ( **back** ) **to** her **back**.

A **`baptism** or **christening** is a ceremony in which a few drops of water are poured on a person or they are immersed in water to welcome them into the Christian Church and often to name them.

**20** Some Christians, the **`Baptists**, are members of a Christian Protestant Church that believes that baptism should take place when a person is old enough to understand what it means, and not as a baby.

They may go to their own **Baptist** church.

At a **baptism** or **christning**, a person is **baptized** /E& -ised at a **baptismal ceremony**.  
bap`taizd

At the **baptismal service**, the priest **baptizes** the baby Amy, her **Christian name**.

At the christning she is **baptized** a protestant too.

**30** The priest **christens** the child Amy with water from the **baptismal font**.

The priests **baptize** the child in the **name of** the **Father**, the **Son** and the **Holy Ghost** or **Holy Spirit**.

The **Trinity** – the **Blessed** or **Holy Trinity** – is the union of these three persons in one **Godhead**.

A baby may be called **all** names **under the sun**.

The child is a **ray of sunshine**.

She has a **sunny** smile and a **sunny disposition**.

\* i begyndelsen da de var gift

\* ~ få børn

\* siden begyndelsen af ngs. ægteskab \* ~ opdrage / have børn

\* =

\* velsignet med ngt. \* sundt og velskabt

\* falde i > \* dyb søvn

\* =

\* gå ind / ud etc. for at kontrollere se om alt er i orden med \* på skift

\* skifte ng. \* ... ble på ng.

\* ~ vådserviet \* tørre > \* numse, ~ hale

\* hvid som sne

\* få et helsetjek / en helbredsundersøgelse

\* ~ hjemmesundhedsplejerske

\* ~ vende ng. om på > \* maven

\* ... ng. om / ( tilbage ) på > \* ryggen

\* dåb \* =

\*

\*

\*

\* baptist

\*

\*

\*

\* baptist

\* dåb \* dåb \* døbe

\* dåbs- \* ceremoni

\* dåbshandling \* døbe ng. ( et navn )

\* ~ fornavn

\* ( være / blive ) døbt ( protestant )

\* døbe ng. ( et navn )

\* døbe- / dåbs- \* font

\* døbe ng. i ngs. navn

\* Faderen, Sønnen og Helligånden

\* Treenigheden \* den Hellige Treenighed

\* guddommelighed

\* ~ alverdens ( navne )

\* ~ solstråle

\* ~ munter \* = \* gemyt

**1396** A person may have a **middle name** too,  
together with his **surname** or **family name**.

When a child is **christened**, a couple of **godparents**  
may promise to be responsible for the child.

The **godmother** and **godfather** are **sponsors**,  
and the **godchild**, a **godson** or **goddaughter**  
becomes their **Child of God**.

## LIVING IN A NUCLEAR FAMILY

A baby at once uses **non-verbal** communication  
for instance by crying and soon by smiling.

**10** Al also smiles when he **baths** E/A **bathes** the baby.  
bɑ#s beɪdz  
At a time a baby will try to imitate simple words  
for people and objects it is repeatedly presented to.

While Amy slowly develops her **verbal** skills,  
she gradually learns to **express** herself **verbally**.

Trying to give a **verbatim** / **word-for-word** repetition of  
vê~`beitim  
small phrases, Amy little by little learns how to **verbalize**:

**verbalize** ( E& -se ) her feelings and **wants**.

Every night, Ann or Al **looks at pictures** in a **picture book**  
together with Amy before they put her to sleep.

**20** **Repeating** exciting **phrases verbatim** / **word for word**,

Amy soon has a rich **vocabulary**.  
vê`kabjulêri

Amy is a **verbally** and musically **inclined** child.

Ann and Al enjoy Amys's growing **verbal repertoire**.

Amy is a **spirited** girl: a **high-spirited** girl.  
`repêtwa~

She is a girl **of spirit**: a girl **full of spirits**.

**Dandling** Amy, Ann or Al **jumps** her **on** their **knee**.

Being **dandled**, **riding on** Ann or Al's **knee**,

Amy **guffaws** with delight / **ecstasy** / **rapture**  
gê`fâ~z  
as she lets out loud **guffaws** of delight / ecstasy / rapture.

**30** Although Ann and Al wanted to **have a large family**,  
they seem unable to have more children.

For some years they live happily as a **family of three**.

Al is usually **occupied in** ( **doing** ) business while Ann  
is **occupied with** ( **doing** ) domestic / household **chores**.

Every Saturday all the family are **occupied shopping**.

They have a **checklist** of the things they must remember,  
and **all along** they make a **shopping list**.

\* mellemnavn

\* efternavn

\* =

\* ( blive ) døbt

\* gudforældre

\*

\* gudmoder

\* ansvarlig person  
gudfar / -mor

\* gudbarn

\* gudsøn

\* guddatter

\* ~ gudbarn

\* kernefamilie

\* & ikke sproglig

\*

\* bade ng.

\*

\*

\* sproglige ( færdigheder )

\* udtrykke ( sig )

\* sprogligt

\* ordret, ord for ord / =

\* ~ udtrykke sig sprogligt

\* udtrykke ngt.

\* fornødenheder, behov

\* se på >

\* billeder

\* billed-

\* bog

\*

\* gentage

\* ordret (adv! )

\* ord for ord

\* ordforråd

\* sprogligt

\* begavet

\* sproglig

\* repertoire

\* livlig, rask

\* =

\* fuld af gåpåmod

\* =

\*

\* ~ ride ranke med ng.

\* & ~ <

\* ~ ride ranke

\* & ~ <

\* skraldgrine

\* ekstase, henrykkelse

\* =

\* latterudbrud

\* mange børn

\*

\* familie på tre

\* beskæftiget med / optaget af ngt.

\* =

\* regelmæssigt / kedeligt / ubehageligt stykke arbejde

\* ( være ) optaget ( af ) at -

\* kontrol- / huskeseddel over ngt.

\* ~ hen ad vejen

\* indkøbsliste



**1397** In the supermarket, many foods are **chilled**.

A **quality control checker** checks that the **chilled foods** and the **frozen foods** are kept at a proper temperature.

A **complaint** may be made **verbally** or **in writing**.

If a shop receives a **verbal** warning, the manager may ask for a **verbatim / word -for-word** report.

At **checkout** the **cashier /eA checker** – a **checkout assistant** or **checkout operator** – enters every **item on the till**.

**10** She **rings** the prices **up** by pressing the **buttons**.

Having **rung up** all the the goods, she finished the sale whereby the **cash register** prints out the bill.

Ann and All **check** the bill together.

To borrow a book at the **library**, Al or Ann have to show their ID before the **librarian checks out** the book in their name.

**Indulging** their **passion** for romantic fiction, some people **indulge themselves with** romantic fiction.

**Indulging in** stories of love and **stormy** relationships, they are **carried away** by **slushy** romantic fiction.

**20** The parents **spread** the workload **between** them, and, as far as possible, the family **spread** the work **among** them.

Every day Amy helps Ann **spreading** the **table**

She helps Ann **spreading** the **cloth ( out )**.

Ann **spreads** the cloth ( **out** ) **on** the table so Amy can help her **spreading** the cloth ( **out** ) **over** the table.

In the morning everybody **goes and gets washed up**.

They may have a **pieces / slice / round of toast** or **rye bread spread with** butter together with an egg, marmelade, a slice of cheese, or meat etc.

**30** Ann uses a low-fat **spread** instead of butter.

They may have a **cheese spread**.

Amy would like to **spread** butter **on** her **bread** herself.

She uses a **spreader** but even if she tries hard, she is not yet old enough to **spread** her **round of** bread **with** butter or **spread**.

Cold butter won't **spread** easily **on** a **slice of** bread.

**Sliced / ready-sliced / ready-cut** bread is a loaf of bread that has been sliced with a machine and packed for sale.

\* kølet ned

\* kvalitets-                      \* ~ kontrollør                      \* kølevarer

\* frostvarer

\* klage                                      \* mundtlig                                      \* skriftlig

\* mundtlig

\* ordret, ord for ord

\* ( supermarkedts- ) kasse                                      \* kassedame / - ekspedient

\* =                                      \* =                                      \* indtaste / slå ngt. ind

\* artikel, vare                                      \* på kasseapparat

\* slå ngt. op ( på et kasseapparat )                                      \* tast

\* =

\* kasseapparat

\* tjekke / kontrollere ngt.

\* bibliotek

\* bibliotekar                                      \* ~ notere ngt. til udlån

\* tilfredsstille >                                      \* lidenskab

\* ~ hengive sig til / svælge i ngt.

\* - - -                                      \* stormfuld ( forhold )

\* revet med / henført af >

\* fordele ngt. mellem sig

\* =

\* ~ dække bord

\* sprede / brede > ( ud )                                      \* dug

\* sprede / brede ngt. ( ud ) på ngt.

\* - - - over ngt.

\* ~ gå ud og vaske hænder

\* stykke / skive / rundenom >                                      \* ristet brød

\* rugbrød                                      \* ~ smurt med ngt.

\*

\* ~ smøreprodukt

\* ~ smøreost

\* ~ smøre ngt. på >

\* ~ smørekniv

\* ~ smøre ngt. >                      \* rundtenom skive                      \* med ( smør )

\* ~ smøre pålæg

\* ~ smøres ud på >                                      \* skive ( toast )

\* skiveslåret ( brød )

\*

**1398** Amy wants her egg **fried** on both sides

while her parents want their eggs **sunny-side up**.

The parents drink **freeze-dried instant** coffee.

Ann leaves the meat to **thaw** completely before cooking.

The meat takes a long time to **thaw out**.

She **melts** some butter in a **roasting tin** E/A **pan**.

When the butter has **melted**, she puts the roast  
in the tin / pan and places it in the oven.

They have roast and dessert that just **melts in** their **mouth**.

**10** The pudding has to **chill** for an hour until **set**.

They may **freeze** the **leftovers** ( norm. pl. ) from the meal.

Some meals are ideal for home **freezing**.

Some fruits **freeze** better than othes.

They have a large **freezer** EA/E **deep`freeze**.

In America they also call it a **Deepfreeze** or **deep`freezer**.

Much **frozen food** has to **be defrosted** before cooking.  
di'fråstid

They often **defrost** a chicken.

When they **unfreeze** a chicken in the fridge,  
the chicken will take a long time to **defrost**.

**20** It might have to **unfreeze** for 24 hours.

A **stuffing** /&A **dressing** is placed inside.

Sometimes they have to **de-ice** the freezer  
so once in a while they **defrost** the deep freeze.

The family often **do / wash the dishes** (EA) together.

Using a **washing-up bowl** (E), a **washing-up brush**,  
and a **splash** of **washing-`up liquid** (E), they **wash up** (E).

Sometimes they **rinse** the **washing-`up** (E).

Amy sometimes **washes dishes** (E)  
while the other ones **dry** ( ) **up** ( dishes etc.).

**30** In America they **wash** the **dishes** in a **dishpan**,  
using **dishwashing liquid** and a **dishwashing brush**.

They leave the dishes to **drain** before they **dry** them  
with a **tea towel** / a **tea cloth** EE/A **dishtowel**.

Amy doesn't **wipe up** as **wiping** the **dishes** is more  
difficult to handle.

They **wipe** the tables with a **dishcloth** E/A **dishrag**.

\* stegt, ~spejlet

\* ~ ... kun på den ene side

\* frysetørret

\* ~ pulver ( kaffe )

\* tør op

\* =

\* smelte ngt.

\* stege-

\* ~ ( metal-) fad

\* smelte

\*

\* ~ smelte på tungen ( dvs. mørt og velsmagende )

\* køle af

\* stivnet

\* ( dyb- ) fryse ngt.

\* levninger

\* frysning, ~ til at fryse

\* ~ egne sig til ...

\* ( dyb- ) fryser

\* =

\* dybfrossen \* mad  
& dybfrostvarer

\* ( blive ) optøet

\* optø ngt.

\* =

\* tør op

\* =

\* & et døgn

\* ~ farsering

\* ~ fjerne is fra ngt.

\* afise / -rime ngt.

\* vaske op

\* opvaskebalje

\* -børste

\* skvæt

\* flydende opvaskemiddel

\* vaske op

\* skylle ngt. efter ( med rent vand )

\* opvask

\* ~ vaske af

\* tørre ( ngt.) af

\* ~ vaske op

\* opvaskebalje

\* opvaske- \* ( væske ), ~ middel

\* opvaske- \* børste

\* dryppe af

\* tørre ngt.

\* viskestykke

\* tørre af

\* tørre >

\* ~ service  
( tallerkener, fade, bestik )

\*

\* tørre ( bord ) ( af )

\* karklud

**1399** A ( Welsh ) ` **dresser** E/A a **hutch** is a wooden piece of furniture with shelves in the top and cupboards below used for displaying and storing cups, plates, dishes etc.

In America a dresser or bureau is a **chest of drawers** (E/A)

Ann or Al wash the pots and pans, and **rinse** them **with** hot water.

Sometimes after a party, the **kitchen sink** may still be full of last night's **dirty dishes** /E& **washing-up**.

When some people **do the dishes** /E& **the washing-up**, **10** they may forget to **wash up** a few things.

They may forget to **wash** the pots and pans **up**.

Ann usually **does** the **wash** ( E& **washing** ) / **laundry** when there is a **pile** of **dirty wash** (E& **washing** ) / **laundry** in the **clothes basket** or **laundry basket**.

She **washes** once a week.

An **article** of **clothing** may be in the **wash**.

Most **items wash** well and most fabrics are **washable**: they are guaranteed to **wash**.

Some clothes **put in** the **wash** may **shrink in** the **wash**.

**20** When she **launders** the **clothes**, she **washes**, **dries** and **irons** the **clothes**.

Having washed the clothes, she **hangs** the **washing out**.

She **hangs** it **outside** to **dry**.

**Hanging** the washing **up** on a **line** (EA) – a **washing line** or **clothes line** (EE) – she fastens it with **clothes pegs** (E)

In America they use **clothes pins**.

Ann sends some of the laundry to a **laundry**.

A **laundry man** in a **laundry van** picks up the dirty laundry, and delivers the clean laundry.

**30** Before Ann moved in with Al, she washed at a **laund(e)rette** /A& **Laundromat** <sup>TM</sup>.  
lã~n`dret

**At one time** the family **purchases** a **washer**.

First they get a **washing machine**, and later on they get a **dishwasher**.

Amy sometimes **vacuums**.

She **vacuums** a room or two with their **vacuum cleaner**.

When Ann **does the Hoovering**, she **hoovers** all the rooms and carpets with their **Hoover** <sup>TM</sup> (EEE).

\* ~ udstillingsanrettermøbel

\*

\* =

\* kommode

\* skylle ngt. efter med ngt.

\*

\* køkkenvask

\* opvask

\* vaske op

\* vaske ngt. op

\* - = -

\* klare tøjvasken

\* stabel

bunke

\* vasketøjskurv

\* vaske

\* ~ tøjstykke

\* enkeltstykke

\* ~ kunne / tåle at vaskes

\* ~ lægge ngt. til vask

\* ~ ordne vasketøj

\* stryge >

\* hænge >

\* ... ngt. udenfor ( for at - )

\* hænge ngt. op

\* =

\* =

\* vaskeri

\* vaskeri-

\*

\*

\* vasketeria

\* på et tidspunkt

\* vaskemaskine

\* opvaskemaskine

\* støvsuge

\* ... ngt.

\* ordne støvsugningen

\* støvsuger

\* ... vasketøj  
vask og strygning

\* ... vasketøj  
der skal stryges

\* =

\* ~ til vask ( i vask / vente på vask )

\* ~ tåle at vaskes

\* vaskbar

\* krybe, krympe

\* i vask

\* vaske >

\* tørre >

\* tøj

\* vasketøjet ud

\* tørre

\* vasketøjs-

\* tøjklemme

\* vaskeri-      \* mand, ~ bud      \* vaskeri-      \* vogn

\* støvsuger

\* støvsuge ngt.

1400 ) The family sometimes play **ludo** E/A **parcheesi**.  
pa~r`t\$~si

a **board game** having its **origin in** India /

**originating in / from** India.

A **roll of** the **dice** E/eA **die** or two **dice** decides the number  
of **squares** to move their **counter / pawn / piece on** the **board**.

If they **roll** ( their **dice / die** ) and **get** a six **on** your **roll**,  
they move their counter etc. six squares.

A counter may be **sent back to** its **starting corner /**  
**returned to** its **owner's yard**.

\* ludo

\* bræt-                      \* spil                      \* oprindelse i ( Indien )

\* ~ have sin oprindelse i / stamme fra ( = )

\* ~ kast med >                      \* terning                      \* -er

\* felt                      \* ~ brik                      \* bræt

\* ~ slå                      \* få / slå ( sekser ) > \* med > \* ~slag  
( ~ med terning )

\*

\* ( brik ) ~ slået hjem

\* =